

# 新概念英语 第一册

## FIRST THINGS FIRST

课堂笔记 & 课后练习

New  
Concept  
English

1



本资料是依据「胶囊助学计划®」新概念英语第一册的视频录播课为基础整理编辑的。  
任何单位或个人不得盗版，转售或以任何形式以此获取经济利益，侵权必究。





## 使用指南

---

首先，非常开心大家能喜欢我们的课程。之前常常有学员询问有没有课后练习的电子版文件或者PPT文件，想要打印出来，方便学习。基于此，我们设计制作了这本专门针对我们的视频课程的学习手册（课程笔记和课后练习）。这本手册的内容设置和视频课程的学习顺序是完全吻合的。这样在学习视频的时候，省去做笔记的时间，可以更专注的听课，做知识点的标注。

除此之外，我们在每一个偶数课后设置了笔记页，笔记页采用了康奈尔笔记法的布局。Questions位置来记录你遇到的问题；Homework位置来完成你的课后作业；Summary & Recap位置来进行回忆和总结核心知识点。如右图所示。

本手册的所有权归胶囊助学计划所有，且为付费产品。我们只在胶囊助学计划的官方【淘宝】【微店】进行售卖，如果您是从除此之外的任何地方购买此商品，欢迎您告诉我们，并随手举报。

本作品售价：14.9 RMB，[且需要配合B站\(哔哩哔哩\)免费视频课程使用，在B站搜索“胶囊助学计划”或扫描下方二维码来学习](#)。如果您是从任何地方免费获得此商品的，欢迎关注微信公众号：[jiaonangzhuxue](#)，以打赏的方式支持我们付出的辛苦，当然微信公众号中还有更多的学习资源免费提供给大家。

### 特别提醒

在制作的过程中难免有错误，欢迎指出。我们会做出调整。或者您有任何关于本手册的想法都可以发送 E-mail 告诉我们。

E-mail: [capsuleacademy@icloud.com](mailto:capsuleacademy@icloud.com)



Questions

记录问题

Homework

课后作业

Summary & Recap

回忆总结

It's never too late to learn.

| 1   | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5   | 6   | 7   | 8   | 9   | 10  | 11  | 12  |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 13  | 14  | 15  | 16  | 17  | 18  | 19  | 20  | 21  | 22  | 23  | 24  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 25  | 26  | 27  | 28  | 29  | 30  | 31  | 32  | 33  | 34  | 35  | 36  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 37  | 38  | 39  | 40  | 41  | 42  | 43  | 44  | 45  | 46  | 47  | 48  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 49  | 50  | 51  | 52  | 53  | 54  | 55  | 56  | 57  | 58  | 59  | 60  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 61  | 62  | 63  | 64  | 65  | 66  | 67  | 68  | 69  | 70  | 71  | 72  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 73  | 74  | 75  | 76  | 77  | 78  | 79  | 80  | 81  | 82  | 83  | 84  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 85  | 86  | 87  | 88  | 89  | 90  | 91  | 92  | 93  | 94  | 95  | 96  |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 97  | 98  | 99  | 100 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 107 | 108 |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 109 | 110 | 111 | 112 | 113 | 114 | 115 | 116 | 117 | 118 | 119 | 120 |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 121 | 122 | 123 | 124 | 125 | 126 | 127 | 128 | 129 | 130 | 131 | 132 |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |
| 133 | 134 | 135 | 136 | 137 | 138 | 139 | 140 | 141 | 142 | 143 | 144 |
| ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |

# 1

/ɪk'skjuz/ /mi:/

## excuse me

/ɪ/ /i:/

m /m/

打扰一下 (引起注意)

借过; 让一下

/'hændbæg/

## handbag n.

hand+bag

/æ/ /e/ yes /jes/

h /h/, d/d/, n/n/, b/b/, g/g/

拼写+发音+词性+含义

造句/短语

/'pɑ:dən/

## pardon

p /p/ d/d/ n/n/

sorry?

come again?

what?

/θæŋk/ /ju:/

## Thank you very(so) much

th /θ/ /ð/

thank you?

连读? 弱读? 缩读? (连笔字)

### homework

关闭视频后请回忆刚刚讲解的知识点, 看能回忆出多少? 基于 Study–Test 理论。 (吸收效率更高)

#### 一般疑问句

This is my handbag.

Is this my handbag?

Is this your handbag?

This is my...

This is my car.

This is my house.

This is my passport.

This is my ...

Is this your handbag?

=Your handbag?

=This your handbag?

=This is your handbag?

### homework

绿皮书 第一课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法+知识点。参考 Learning Pyramid. (学习金字塔)

# 2

/pen/

## pen n.

This is my...

Is this your...?

/'pensəl/

## pencil n.

This is my...

Is this your...?

/bʊk/

## book n.

This is my...?

Is this your...?

note+book=notebook

/wɒtʃ/

## watch n.

This is my...?

Is this your...?

/kəʊt/

## coat n.

This is my...?

Is this your...?

nice Coat / Hair

/dres/ /skə:t/

## dress skirt n.

This is my...?

Is this your...?

清辅音—浊辅音

/ʃɔ:t/

## shirt n.

This is my...?

Is this your...?

T-shirt

/kɑ:/

## car n.

c /k/

This is my...?

Is this your...?

/haʊs/

## house n.

h /h/

This is my...?

Is this your...?

on the house = free

## homework

绿皮书 第2课的写作练习

尝试回忆 (study-test) 并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点 (learning pyramid)

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

# 3

## Words

/ʌm'brelə/

### umbrella n.

This is my umbrella.

Is this your umbrella?

/pli:z/

### please

please please please 拜托了

/hɪə/

### here

come here

Leo is here.

Is Leo here?

/maɪ/

### my

my+n.

/tɪkɪt/

### ticket n.

/ɪ/

t /t/ k /k/

one way ticket

return ticket /round-trip ticket

one ticket to \_\_\_\_\_

/'nʌmbə/

### number

number one/two...

/faɪv/

### five

zero one two three ...nine

115 /150

/'sɒri/

### sorry

I am so sorry.

/sɜ:/ /'mædəm/

### sir madam

s /s/

/ɜ:/

Thank you, sir (man) / ma'am

/'klaʊkrəm/

### cloakroom 衣帽间

cloak+ room

This is my cloakroom.

### homework

尝试回忆(study-test)并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点(learning pyramid)

查明英文的0-9如何表达, 尝试把自己的电话号码用 英文表达流畅

## Grammar

这是我的雨伞。

This is my umbrella.

这不是我的雨伞。

This not is my umbrella.

This is my coat.

1 一般疑问句

2 肯定回答/否定回答

3 否定句

Here is my \_\_\_\_\_ (money / cellphone / coat / number)

### homework

绿皮书 第3课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点(learning pyramid & study test)

*/su:t/***suit n.**

recap:/u:/ s/s/ t/t/

nice suit

I love your suit.

it suits me

*/sku:l/***school n.**

recap: 清辅音——浊辅音

This is my school.

一般疑问句+否定句

*/'ti:tʃə/***teacher n.**

recap: /i:/ /ə/ t/t/

This is my teacher.

一般疑问句+ 否定句

*/sʌn/ /'dɔ:tə/***son daughter n.**

recap: s/s/ n/n/ d/d/

This is my son(daughter).

一般疑问句 + 否定句

**pen**

1 Is this my pen or your pen?

2 This is not my pen.

3 This is your pen.

**pencil**

1 Is this my pencil or your pencil?

2 This is not my pencil.

3 This is your pencil.

**book**

1 Is this my book or your book?

2 This is not my book.

3 This is your book.

**watch**

1 Is this my watch or your watch?

2 This is not my watch.

3 This is your watch.

**coat**

1 Is this my coat or your coat?

2 This is not my coat.

3 This is your coat.

**dress**

1 Is this my dress or your dress?

2 This is not my dress.

3 This is your dress.

**skirt**

1 Is this my skirt or your skirt?

2 This is not my skirt.

3 This is your skirt.

**shirt**

1 Is this my shirt or your shirt?

2 This is not my shirt.

3 This is your shirt.

**car**

1 Is this my car or your car?

2 This is not my car.

3 This is your car.

**house**

1 Is this my house or your house?

2 This is not my house.

3 This is your house.

**suit**

- 1 Is this my suit or your suit?
- 2 This is not my suit.
- 3 This is your suit.

**teacher**

- 1 Is this my teacher or your teacher?
- 2 This is not my teacher.
- 3 This is your teacher.

**school**

- 1 Is this my school or your school?
- 2 This is not my school.
- 3 This is your school.

**son daughter**

- 1 Is this your son?
- 2 This is not my son.
- 3 Is this your daughter?
- 4 This is my daughter.

**homework**

绿皮书 第4课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点(learning pyramid+study-test)

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**David Joseph Beckham**

David—first name/given name

Joseph—middle name

Beckham—surname/family name/last name

Mr.Beacham; call me David please.

*/mɪstəl/ /mɪs/ /mɪsɪz/ /mɪz/***Mr . Miss Mrs. Ms.**

Mr. Bean (未知) +last name / surname

Mrs. A (已婚)

Miss A (未婚) Miss Universe

Ms. A (未知)

*/gʊd/ /'mɔ:nɪŋ/***good morning**

g /d/ etc.

Morning

*/nju:/ /'stju:dənt/***new adj. student n.**

adj. + n.

She is a new student.

*/frentʃ/***French**

French fries = chips

He is French.

一般疑问句 + 否定句

*/'dʒɜ:mən/***German adj. n.**

German

She is German.

一般疑问句 + 否定句

普通话

*/naɪs/ /mɪ:t/***Nice to meet you**

first time.

How are you? = Hi

*/dʒæp'nɪ:z/***Japanese adj. n.**

sushi /'su:ʃi/

They are Japanese.

Are they Japanese?

*/ke'riən/***Korean adj. n.**

kimchi /kɪmtʃi:/ 韩式泡菜

She is Korean.

*/tʃaɪ'ni:z/***Chinese adj. n.**

国籍 血统

fusion food 融合菜

Mandarin; Cantonese 粤语

*/tu:/***too**

I like this coat. me too.

**homework**

请给自己讲解一遍本期课 程的核心知识点

a an  
一个  
位置: a/an + n.  
Leo is a teacher.

a an+n.  
a+n. (首音标是辅音音标)  
an+n. (首音标是元音音标)  
而非字母

a pen  
an apple  
an umbrella an egg  
an hour  
a university

This is \_ book.      Is this \_ watch?  
She is \_ teacher.      This is not \_ umbrella.

### homework

绿皮书 第五课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法+知识点。参考 Learning Pyramid. (学习金字塔)

## Comprehension

1 T :Is Sophie a new student?  
S:Yes, she is.

6 T :What nationality is Naoko?  
S:She's Japanese.

2 T :Is she German?  
S>No, she isn't.

7 T :Is Chang-woo a Japanese student or a Korean student?  
S:He's a Korean student.

3 T :What nationality is Sophie?  
S:Sophie is French.

8 T :Is Luming a Korean student or a Chinese student?  
S:He is a Chinese student.

4 T :Is Hans French?  
S>No, he isn't.

9 T :She's Chinese. What is her name?  
S:Her name is Xiaohui.

5 T :What nationality is Hans?  
S:He is German.

10 T:She's Japanese. What is her name?  
S:Her name is Naoko.

1 T: Ask me if Sophie is a new student.  
S: Is Sophie a new student?

2 T : Ask me if Hans is German.  
S: Is Hans German?

3 T : Ask me if Naoko is a Japanese student or a German student.  
S: Is Naoko a Japanese student or a German student?

4 T: Ask me if she is a Chinese student.  
S: Is she a Chinese student?

5 T: Ask me if Chang-woo is Japanese.  
S: Is Chang-woo Japanese?

### homework

绿皮书 第5课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法+知识点(learning pyramid)

# 6

## Words

/meɪk/ /brænd/  
**make brand**

What brand is this?  
**瑞典的/瑞典人 瑞典**

/swi:dɪʃ/ /'swi:dən/  
**Swedish adj. Sweden n.**

He is Swedish.  
This is Swedish meatball.

/'ɪŋglɪʃ/ /'ɪŋglənd/  
**English adj. n. England**

UK; Britain  
England; Scotland; Wales; Northern Ireland

苏格兰 威尔士

/e'merɪkən/  
**American adj. n. America n.**

US; USA

/ɪ'tæljən/ /'ɪtali/  
**Italian adj. n. Italy n.**

She is Italian.  
This is pasta.

意面(统称)

## German American

- 1 This is Barack Obama.
- 2 Is he German?
- 3 No, he isn't German.
- 4 He is American.

## French English

- 1 This is James Bond.
- 2 Is he French?
- 3 No, he isn't French.
- 4 He is English.

### Japanese Chinese

- 1 This is Jacky Chan.
- 2 Is he Japanese?
- 3 No, he isn't Japanese.
- 4 He is Chinese.

### Swedish Italian

- 1 This is Monica Bellucci.
- 2 Is she Swedish?
- 3 No, she isn't Swedish.
- 4 She is Italian.

### Korean Chinese

- 1 This is Bruce Lee.
- 2 Is he Korean?
- 3 No, he isn't Korean.
- 4 He is Chinese.

### homework

绿皮书 第6课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点(learning pyramid+study-test)

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

*/æm/***I am ...**

I am Leo.

I am \_ teacher.(a/an)

I am Chinese.

*/a:/***You are**

You are batman.

Are you Japanese?

**he/she/it is ...**

He is my teacher.

Is she your daughter?

Is it \_ cat? (a/an)

*/næʃə'næləti/***nationality**

What nationality are you?

Where are you from?

*/dʒɒbl/***job**

What's your job?

I'm \_ English teacher.(a/an)

*/'ki:bɔ:d/***keyboard n.**

key+board

This is my keyboard.

*/'ɒpə'reɪtər/***operator n.**

He is \_ operator. (a/an)

*/'endʒɪ'nɪər/***engineer**

She is \_ engineer. (a/an)

**homework**

尝试回忆并请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

单词试着造句

**Grammar**

特殊疑问句 =

特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句  
(去掉答案)

特殊疑问句—where

She is from Italy.

Is she from Italy?

Where is she from?

特殊疑问句—where

I am from China.

Are you from China?

Where are you from?

My name is Leo.

Is your name Leo?

What is your name?

Her name is Monica.

Is her name Monica?

What is her name?

特殊疑问句—where

He is from China.

Is he from China?

Where is he from?

特殊疑问句

He is French.

Is he French?

What nationality is he?

She is German.

Is she German?

What nationality is she?

1 T: Is Robert a new student?  
S: Yes, he is.

2 T: Is Robert French?  
S: No, he is not.

3 T: What nationality is Robert?  
S: He is Italian.

4 T : Is Sophie Italian, too?  
S: No, she is not.

5 T: What nationality is Sophie?  
S: She is French.

6 T: Is Sophie a teacher?  
S: No, she is not.

7 T: What's her job?  
S: She is a keyboard operator.

8 T : Is Robert a keyboard operator,  
too?  
S: No, he is not.

9 T : What's his job?  
S: He is an engineer.

10 T: What's your job?  
S:I'm a student.

## Asking questions

1T: Ask me if Robert is a new student.  
S: Is Robert a new student?  
T: Yes, he is.  
Asking questions

2T: Ask me if Robert is French.  
S: Is Robert French?  
T: No, he is not.

3 T: Ask me if Sophie is a teacher.  
S: Is Sophie a teacher?  
T: No, she is not.

4 T: Ask me if Robert is an engineer.  
S: Is Robert an engineer?  
T: Yes, he is.

5 T: Ask me if Sophie is an engineer,  
too.  
S: Is Sophie an engineer, too?  
T: No, she is not. She is a keyboard  
operator.

### homework

绿皮书 第7课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

回忆课程并请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点 (learning pyramid + study-test)

**he his she her***/pə'li:səmən/***policeman**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a policeman or a taxi driver?
- 3 He isn't a taxi driver.
- 4 He's a policeman.

*/tæksi/ /'draɪvə/***taxi driver**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a taxi driver or a policeman?
- 3 He isn't a policeman.
- 4 He's a taxi driver.

*/pə'li:səwəmən/***policewoman**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a policewoman or an air hostess?
- 3 She isn't an air hostess.
- 4 She's a policewoman.

*/eəl/ /'həʊstəs/    /flaɪt/ /e'tendənt/***air hostess flight attendant**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ an air hostess or a policeman?
- 3 She isn't a policeman.
- 4 She's an air hostess.

*/'pəʊstmən/***postman**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a postman or a milkman?
- 3 He isn't a milkman.
- 4 He's a postman.

*/'mɪlkmən/***milkman**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a milkman or a postman?
- 3 He isn't a postman.
- 4 He's a milkman.

*/nɜ:s/***nurse**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a nurse or a housewife?
- 3 She isn't a housewife.
- 4 She's a nurse.

*/'haʊswaɪf/***housewife**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a housewife or a nurse?
- 3 She isn't a nurse.
- 4 She's a housewife.

*/mɪ'kænɪk/***mechanic**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a mechanic or a hairdresser?
- 3 He isn't a hairdresser.
- 4 He's a mechanic.

*/'heədrɛsə/***hairdresser**

- 1 What's \_ job?
- 2 Is \_ a hairdresser or a mechanic?
- 2 He isn't a mechanic.
- 4 He's a hairdresser.

**homework**

绿皮书 第8课的写作练习

跟着视频一起做跟读练习

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/hə'ləʊ/ /haɪ/  
**hello** **hi**

/haʊ/  
**how**

/faɪn/  
**fine**

How are you?  
I am fine.  
great / not bad / terrible

/tə'deɪ/  
**today**

How are you doing, today?  
How are you?

/wɛl/  
**well**

How are you?  
very well

/θæŋks/  
**thanks**

/gʊd'baɪ/  
**goodbye**

see you later

## Grammar

How 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句 =

特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句  
(去掉答案)

She is ok.

Is she ok?

How

How is she?

## Comprehension

1 T:What's her name?  
S:Helen

2 T:What's his name?  
S:Steven.

3 T:How is Helen today?  
S:She's very well.

4 T:How is Steven today?  
S:He's fine.

5 T:Is Tony well, too?  
S:Yes, he is.

6 T :How is Emma?  
S:She's fine, too.

1 T:Ask me if Helen is well today.  
 S:Is Helen well today?  
 T:How...?  
 S:How is Helen today?

3 T:Ask me if Emma is well today.  
 S:Is Emma well today?  
 T:How...?  
 S:How is Emma today?

2 T:Ask me if Steven is well today.  
 S:Is Steven well today?  
 T:How...?  
 S:How is Steven today?

### homework

绿皮书 第9课的写作练习 文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点(参考 study-test 和 learning pyramid)

# 10

## Words+Practices

/fæt/

### **fat**

Is that man fat or thin?  
 He's not thin. He's fat.

/θɪn/

### **thin**

Is that woman thin or fat?  
 She's not fat. She's thin.

/tɔ:l/

### **tall**

Is that policeman tall or short?  
 He's not short. He's tall.

/ʃɔ:t/

### **short**

Is that policewoman short or tall?  
 She's not tall. She's short.

/dɜ:tɪ/

### **dirty**

Is that mechanic dirty or clean?  
 He's not clean. He's dirty.

/kli:n/

### **clean**

Is that nurse clean or dirty?  
 She's not dirty. She's clean.

/hɒt/

### **hot**

Is Steven hot or cold?  
 He's not cold. He's hot.

/kəʊld/

### **cold**

Is Emma cold or hot?  
 She's not hot. She's cold.

/eəld/

### **old**

Is that milkman old or young?  
 He's not young. He's old.

/jʌŋ/

### **young**

Is that air hostess young or old?  
 She's not old. She's young.

/'bɪzɪ/

### **busy**

Is that housewife busy or lazy?  
 She's not lazy. She's busy.

/'leɪzɪ/

### **lazy**

Is he busy or lazy?  
 He's not busy. He's lazy.

### homework

绿皮书 第10课的写作练习 请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/blu:/***blue adj. + n.**

blue adj. + n.

My keyboard \_ blue. (is/am/are)

*/pə'ha:p/s/***perhaps**

1 Is that your car?

2 I don't know. Perhaps it is.

*/waɪt/***white**

Her coat \_ white. (am/is/are)

*/kætʃ/***catch v.***/hu:z/***whose**

特殊疑问词

**Grammar**

Whose 引导的特殊疑问句

含义：谁的

特殊疑问句 =

特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句  
(去掉答案)

This is her dress.

Is this her dress?

Whose

Whose dress is this?

Whose is this dress?

**watch**

This is her watch.

Is this her watch?

Whose

Whose watch is this?

**keyboard**

This is his keyboard.

Is this his keyboard?

Whose

Whose keyboard is this?

**ticket**

This is her ticket.

Is this her ticket?

Whose

Whose ticket is this?

**Story+Grammar**

n.'s

含义——谁的

This is Leo's pen.

- This is Tims shirt, that is his fathers coat, and this is Stevens tie.
- This is my brothers old car and thats my fathers new car.
- This is my mothers umbrella and thats my sisters handbag.

1 T: Is this Dave's shirt?  
S: No, it isn't.

2 T: Is Dave's shirt white?  
S: No, it isn't.

3 T: Is Dave's shirt blue?  
S: Yes, it is.

4 T: Whose shirt is white?  
S: Tim's is.

5 T: Is this Tim's shirt?  
S: Yes, it is.

6 T: Is Tim's shirt white?  
S: Yes, it is.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if this is Dave's shirt.  
S: Is this Dave's shirt?  
T: Whose...?  
S: Whose shirt is this?

3 T: Ask me if Tim's shirt is white.  
S: Is Tim's shirt white?  
T: What colour...?  
S: What colour is Tim's shirt?

2 T: Ask me if Dave's shirt is blue.  
S: Is Dave's shirt blue?  
T: Whose...?  
S: Whose shirt is blue?

### homework

绿皮书 第11课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 12

## Words

### /'faːðə / /'mʌðə / **father mother**

This is his/her mother.  
Is this his mother?

### /'sɪstə / /'brʌðə / **sister brother**

This is her brother.  
Is this her brother?

### /blaʊz / **blouse**

This is my blouse.  
This is not my blouse.  
Is this your blouse?  
Whose blouse is this?

### /taɪ / **tie**

## handbag

- 1 Whose is that handbag?
- 2 Is it Sophie's?
- 3 It isn't Sophie's. It's Stella's.

## car

- 1 Whose is that car?
- 2 Is it Steven's?
- 3 It isn't Steven's. It's Paul's.

## coat

- 1 Whose is that coat?
- 2 Is it Stella's?
- 3 It isn't Stella's. It's Sophie's.

## umbrella

- 1 Whose is that umbrella?
- 2 Is it Paul's?
- 3 It isn't Paul's. It's Steven's.

## pen

- 1 Whose is that pen?
- 2 Is it your father's?
- 3 It isn't my father's.
- 4 It's my son's.

## dress

- 1 Whose is that dress?
- 2 Is it your mother's?
- 3 It isn't my mother's.
- 4 It's my daughter's.

## suit

- 1 Whose is that suit?
- 2 Is it your son's?
- 3 It isn't my son's.
- 4 It's my father's.

## skirt

- 1 Whose is that skirt?
- 2 Is it your daughter's?
- 3 It isn't my daughter's.
- 4 It's my mother's.

## blouse

- 1 Whose is that blouse?
- 2 Is it your mother's?
- 3 It isn't my mother's.
- 4 It's my sister's.

## tie

- 1 Whose is that tie?
- 2 Is it your father's?
- 3 It isn't my father's.
- 4 It's my brother's.

## homework

绿皮书 第12课的写作练习

利用 tie 写一段对话(10句)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'kʌlər/***colour color****green**

He is Hulk.

He is green.

*/kʌm/***come here***/ʌp'steəz/***upstairs**

up + stairs

come/go upstairs

*/daʊn'steəz/***downstairs**

down + stairs

come/go downstairs

*/smɑ:t/***smart adj. n.**

clever

He is smart.

*/hæt/***hat n.**

clean dirty hat

肯/否/一般/特殊

*/seɪm/***same**

They are the same.

*/'dɪfərənt/***different**

It is different.

*/'ləvli/***lovely**

so cute

This cat is so cute

This is my cat.

Is this your cat?

Whose cat is this?

## Grammar

What colour 特殊疑问句

Her new dress is green.

Is her new dress green?

What colour is her new dress?

blue blouse

1 Her new blouse is blue.

2 Is her new blouse blue?

3 What colour is her new blouse?

black umbrella

1 His new umbrella is black.

2 Is his new umbrella black?

3 What colour is his new umbrella?

white keyboard

1 His new keyboard is white.

2 Is his new keyboard white?

3 What colour is his new keyboard?

## homework

Hat 尝试造句 10句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Is Anna's dress new?  
S: Yes, it is.

2 T: What colour is Anna's hat?  
S: Green (or It's green too).

3 T : Is Anna's hat new?  
S: Yes, it is.

4 T: Is Anna's hat lovely?  
S: Yes, it is.

5 T: Is Anna's dress smart?  
S: Yes, it is.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Anna's dress is new.  
S: Is Anna's dress new?  
T: Yes, it is.

2 T: Ask me if Anna's dress is nice.  
S: Is Anna's dress nice?  
T: Yes, it is.

3 T: Ask me if Anna's dress is blue.  
S: Is Anna's dress blue?  
T: What colour...?  
S: What colour is Anna's dress?

4 T : Ask me if Anna's hat's green too.  
S: Is Anna's hat green, too?  
T: What colour...?  
S: What colour is Anna's hat?

5 T: Ask me if Anna's hat's lovely.  
S: Is Anna's hat lovely?  
T: Yes, it is.

### homework

绿皮书 第13课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 14

## Words

/keɪs/  
**case**

This case is brown.  
This is his case.

/'kɑ:pɪt/  
**carpet n.**

red carpet  
This carpet is brown.  
This is her carpet.

/dɒg/  
**dog**

What colour is this dog?  
Whose dog is this?

## coat

- 1 What colour's Sophie's coat?
- 2 Is it white?
- 3 It isn't white. It's grey.

## tie

- 1 What colour's Leo's tie?
- 2 Is it yellow?
- 3 It isn't yellow. It's orange.

## umbrella

- 1 What colour's Steven's umbrella?
- 2 Is it brown?
- 3 It isn't brown. It's black.

## car

- 1 What colour's Paul's car?
- 2 Is it red?
- 3 It isn't red. It's blue.

## blouse

- 1 What colour's Anna's blouse?
- 2 Is it orange ?
- 3 It isn't orange. It's yellow.

## shirt

- 1 What colour's Tim's shirt?
- 2 Is it blue?
- 3 It isn't blue. It's white.

## hat

- 1 What colour's Steven's hat?
- 2 Is it green and red?
- 3 It isn't green and red.
- 4 It's grey and black.

## case

- 1 What colour's the woman's case?
- 2 Is it grey?
- 3 It isn't grey. It's brown.

## dog

- 1 What colour's Helen's dog?
- 2 Is it grey and black?
- 3 It isn't grey and black.
- 4 It's brown and white.

## carpet

- 1 What colour's Anna's carpet?
- 2 Is it green?
- 3 It isn't green. It's red.

## homework

绿皮书 第14课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'kʌstəmz/***customs** (海关、风俗)

Goods (货物) to declare (声称、申报)

Nothing to declare

*/'ɒfɪsəl/***officer office**

What's her job?

She is a customs officer.

**girl boy**

This girl/boy is so cute.

*/'deɪnɪʃ/***Danish adj. n.**

Andersen is Danish.

Is Andersen Danish?

*/'dɛnmɑ:k/***Denmark n.**

Andersen is from Denmark. Is Andersen from Denmark? Where is Andersen from?

*/nɔ:gjə'nædʒən/***Norwegian adj. n.**

Henrik Ibsen is Norwegian.

*/'nɔ:wei/***Norway n.**

Ibsen is from Norway.

Is Ibsen from Norway?

Where is Ibsen from?

*/'pa:s pɔ:t/***passport**

L3: Here is my passport.

This is her passport.

Is this her passport?

Whose passport is this?

*/braʊn/***brown**

His new carpet is brown.

Is his new carpet brown? What colour is his new carpet?

*/'tuərɪst/***tourist n.**

I am new here, too. 我也是刚来这里

She is a tourist.

Are you a tourist?

*/frend/***friend**

She is her friend.

## Grammar

n. 单数/复数 规则 1.直接加s friend—friends

pen

This is my pen.

pens

These are my pens.

book

This is my book.

books

These are my books.

passport

This is my passport.

passports

These are my passports.

dress

This is my dress.

dresses

These are my dresses.

watch

This is my watch.

watches

These are my watches.

tomato

This is my tomato.

tomatoes

These are my tomatoes.

dish

This is my dish.

dishes

These are my dishes.

box

This is my box.

boxes

These are my boxes.

### homework

随便找一些名词，用字典或网络查一查它的复数

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Are the girls Swedish?

S:No, they are not.

6 T:What colour are their cases?

S:Brown

2 T:Are they Danish?

S:Yes, they are.

7 T:Are the girls tourists?

S:Yes, they are.

3 T:Are their friends Danish, too?

S:No, they are not.

8 T:Are their friends tourists , too?

S:Yes, they are.

4 T:Are they Swedish or Norwegian?

S:They are Norwegian.

9 T :What nationality are the girls?

S:They are Danish.

5 T:Are the girls' cases green?

S:No, they are not.

10 T:What nationality are their friends?

S:They are Norwegian.

1 T:Ask me if the girls are Swedish.  
 S:Are the girls Swedish?  
 T:What nationality ...?  
 S:What nationality are the girls?

2 T:Ask me if their friends are Danish.  
 S:Are their friends Danish?  
 T:What nationality ...?  
 S:What nationality are their friends?

3 T:Ask me if their cases are brown.  
 S:Are their cases brown?  
 T:What colour ...?  
 S:What colour are their cases?

4 T:Ask me if their cases are brown.  
 S:Are their cases brown?  
 T:Whose ...?  
 S:Whose cases are brown?

### homework

绿皮书 第15课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 16

## Words

/rʌsən/

### Russian adj. n.

This is Leo Tolstoy. 列夫托尔斯泰  
 He is Russian.

/rʌsən/

### Russia n.

Tolstoy is from Russia.  
 Is Tolstoy from Russia?  
 Where is Tolstoy from?

/dʌtʃ/

### Dutch adj. n. 荷兰人、荷兰的、AA制 AA制的几种表达:

Let's go Dutch.  
 Let's split.

It's on me/My treat 我请客  
 pro bono (拉丁文短语) 为公众利益  
 My pro bono.我的无偿服务 (也可理解为我请客)  
 荷兰:

This is Vincent van Gogh. 文森特梵高  
 He is Dutch.  
 /'hɔlənd/

### Holland n. 荷兰

Vincent is from Holland. Is Vincent from  
 Holland? Where is Vincent from?

/red/

### red

Her hat is red.  
 Is her hat red?  
 Whose hat is red?  
 What colour is her hat?

/greɪ/

### grey gray

His tie is grey.  
 Is his tie grey?  
 Whose tie is grey?  
 What colour is his tie?

/'jeləʊ/

### yellow

His keyboard is yellow.  
 Is his keyboard yellow?  
 Whose keyboard is yellow?  
 What colour is his keyboard?

/blæk/ /waɪt/

## black white

Life isn't black and white. 生活不是非黑即白

/'ɒrɪndʒ/

## orange

Her umbrella is orange.

Is her umbrella orange?

Whose umbrella is orange?

What colour is her umbrella?

/ði:z/

## these this

This is his box.

These are his boxes.

/ðəʊz/

## those that

That is his box.

Those are his boxes.

# Practices

单数 is 复数 are

My shirt is red.

Is your shirt red?

What colour is your shirt?

My shirts are red.

Are your shirts red?

What colour are your shirts?

### book — books

1 What colour are your books?

2 Our books are black.

### umbrella — umbrellas

1 What colour are their umbrellas?

2 Their umbrellas are black.

### shirt — shirts

1 What colour are your shirts?

2 Our shirts are white.

### dog — dogs

1 What colour are her dogs?

2 Her dogs are brown and white.

### coat — coats

1 What colour are your coats?

2 Our coats are grey.

### pen — pens

1 What colour are your pens?

2 My pens are blue.

### ticket — tickets

1 What colour are his tickets?

2 His tickets are yellow.

### handbag — handbags

1 What colour are her handbags?

2 Her handbags are white.

### suit — suits

1 What colour are his suits?

2 His suits are blue.

### tie — ties

1 What colour are their ties?

2 Their ties are orange.

### hat — hats

1 What colour are her hats?

2 Her hats are grey and black.

### car — cars

1 What colour are their cars?

2 Their cars are red.

### passport — passports

1 What colour are their passports?

2 Their passports are black.

### blouse — blouses

1 What colour are your blouses?

2 Our blouses are yellow.

## homework

绿皮书 第16课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ɪm'plɔɪrɪə/***employee**

They are my employees.

*/hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ/***hardworking adj.**

He is a hard-working man.

*/seɪlz/ /rep/***sales rep**

salesman / saleswoman

What's her job?

She is a saleswoman.

*/mæn/ /'wʊmən/ /mən/ /'wɪmɪn/***man woman men women**

Men are from Mars 火星

Women are from Venus 金星

*/'ɒfɪs/***office officer**

This is Berlin's office.

Is this Berlin's office?

Whose office is this?

*/ə'sɪstənt/***assistant**

What's her job?

She is an office assistant.

**名词复数：以 f/fe 结尾的  
把 f/fe 变成 v 再加-es 读/vz/**

housewife—housewives

knife—knives

thief—thieves

**名词复数：辅音字母+y结尾的  
变 y 为 i 再加-es 读/z]/**

country — countries

family — families

city — cities

party — parties

baby — babies

**名词复数：元音字母+y结尾的  
直接+s**

day — days

boy — boys

monkey — monkeys

*red /red/ adj. 红色的*      *orange /'ɔ:rɪndʒ/ adj. 橘黄色的*

**Notes on the text 课文注释**

1 如果名词是以 s 尾的，变成复数时要加 es, 如 dress — dresses。  
 2 表示复数的 -s 或 -es 一般遵循以下发音规则：

- (1) 如果名词词尾的发音是一个清辅音 (/s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/ 除外)，-s 发 /s/ 的音，如 books /buks/, suits /su:ts/;
- (2) 如果名词词尾的发音是一个浊辅音 (/z/, /ð/, /dʒ/ 除外) 或元音，-s 发 /z/ 的音，如 ties /taiz/, dogs /dɔgz/;
- (3) 如果名词词尾的发音是 /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /tʃ/ 或 /dʒ/，-es 发 /iz/ 的音，如 dresses /'dresiz/, blouses /'blauziz/。

**Written exercises 书面练习**

A Complete these sentences using a or an.  
 完成以下句子，用冠词 a 或 an 填空。

**homework**

试着用本课单词造句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

## Who 特殊疑问句

That is Leo.

Is that Leo?

Who is that?

Who's that?

表示过来见见.....:

Come and meet.....

Come meet.....

## Who 特殊疑问句

This young man is Leo.

Is this young man Leo?

Who is this young man?

## Who 特殊疑问句

Who's Whose

## Iron Man

1 This is Iron Man.

2 Is this Iron Man?

3 Who is this?

## Hulk

1 He is Hulk.

2 Is he Hulk?

3 Who is he?

## Captain America

1 This is Captain America.

2 Is this Captain America?

3 Who is this?

## Black Widow

1 She is Black Widow.

2 Is she Black Widow?

3 Who is she?

## Comprehension

---

1 T:Are Nicola Grey and Claire Taylor nurses?  
S:No, they aren't.

2 T:What are their jobs?  
S:They're keyboard operators.

3 T:Are the women hard-working?  
S:Yes, they are.

4 T:Are Michael Baker and Jeremy Short keyboard operators, too?  
S>No, they aren't.

5 T:Are they sales reps or office assistants?  
S:They're sales reps.

6 T:Are they very busy?  
S:No, they aren't.

7 T:Who is the young man?  
S:Jim.

8 T:Is Jim a sales rep or an office assistant?  
S:He's an office assistant.

9 T:Is Jim very busy?  
S:Yes, he is.

10 T:Is he hard-working?  
S:Yes, he is.

1 T:Ask me if Nicola Grey is a keyboard operator. S:Is Nicola Grey a keyboard operator?  
T:Yes, she is.

2 T:Ask me if Claire Taylor is very busy.  
S:Is Claire Taylor very busy?  
T:Yes, she is.

3 T :Ask me if Michael Baker and Jeremy Short are keyboard operators too.  
S:Are Michael Baker and Jeremy Short keyboard operators, too?  
T>No, they aren't.

4 T:Ask me if the two men are lazy.  
S:Are the two men very lazy?  
T:Yes, they are.

5 T:Ask me if the young man is an office assistant. S:Is the young man an office assistant?  
T:Yes, he is.

### homework

绿皮书 第17课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 18

## Practices

**they their**

**sales reps**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they mechanics?
- 3 They aren't mechanics.
- 4 They're sales reps.

**nurses**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they keyboard operators?
- 3 They aren't keyboard operators.
- 4 They're nurses.

**air hostesses**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they policewomen?
- 3 They aren't policewomen.
- 4 They're air hostesses.

**taxi drivers**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they hairdressers?
- 3 They aren't hairdressers.
- 4 They're taxi drivers.

**teachers**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they engineers?
- 3 They aren't engineers.
- 4 They're teachers.

**housewives**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they policewomen?
- 3 They aren't policewomen.
- 4 They're housewives.

**hairdressers**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they milkmen?
- 3 They aren't milkmen.
- 4 They're hairdressers.

**keyboard operators**

- 1 What are their jobs?
- 2 Are they nurses?
- 3 They aren't nurses.
- 4 They're keyboard operators.

**homework**

绿皮书 第18课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'mætər/***matter**

What's the matter?

What's wrong?

*/'tʃɪldrən/ /tʃaɪld/***children child**

These are my children.

Are these your children?

Whose children are these?

*/taɪəd/***tired adj.**

I am tired.

*/'θɜːstɪ/***thirsty adj.**

She is very thirsty.

*/mʌm/***mum***/sɪt/ /dəʊn/***sit down**

/t/ 失去爆破

what

*/raɪt/***right**

I am all right.

Are you all right?

*/aɪs/ /kriːm/***ice cream**

These ice creams \_\_ nice. am/is/are

**homework**

关闭视频后请回忆刚刚讲解的知识点，看能回忆出多少？基于 Study-Test 理论。（吸收效率更高）

**Comprehension**

1 T: Are the children tired?

S: Yes, they are.

3 T: Are the ice creams nice?

S: Yes, they are.

2 T: Are the children thirsty?

S: Yes, they are

4 T: Are the children all right now?

S: Yes, they are.

**Asking questions**

1 T: Ask me if the children are tired.

S: Are the children tired?

3 T: Ask me if the ice creams are nice.

S: Are the ice creams nice?

2 T: Ask me if the boy is thirsty.

S: Is the boy thirsty?

T: Who ...?

S: Who is thirsty?

4 T: Ask me if the children are all right now.

S: Are the children all right now?

**homework**

绿皮书 第19课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/bɪg/ /smɔ:l/***big small**

This dog is big.

This cat is small.

*/'əʊpən/***open**

This shop is open.

*/ʃʌt/***shut**

That shop is closed.

*/laɪt/ /'hevi/***light heavy**

Who is heavy? boy or girl?

The girl is heavy.

*/lɒŋ/***long short**

These umbrellas \_ long. am/is/are

Those umbrellas \_ short. am/is/are

*/ʃu:/***shoe**

These shoes \_ nice. am/is/are

Those are her shoes.

Are those her shoes?

Whose shoes are those?

*/'grænfɑ:ðə/***grandfather**

This is his grandfather.

Is this his grandfather?

Whose grandfather is this?

Who is this?

*/'grænmʌðə/***grandmother**

This is his grandmother.

Is this his grandmother?

Whose grandmother is this?

Who is this?

**shoes**

1 Look at that boy's shoes.

2 Are they dirty?

3 They're not dirty.

4 They're clean.

**postmen**

1 Look at those postmen.

2 Are they hot?

3 They're not hot.

4 They're cold.

**hairdressers**

1 Look at those hairdressers.

2 Are they fat?

3 They're not fat.

4 They're thin.

**shoes**

1 Look at those shoes.

2 Are they small?

3 They're not small.

4 They're big.

**shops**

1 Look at those shops.

2 Are they shut?

3 They're not shut.

4 They're open.

**boxes**

1 Look at those boxes.

2 Are they light?

3 They're not light.

4 They're heavy.

### **grandmother grandfather**

- 1 Look at grandmother and grandfather.
- 2 Are they young?
- 3 They're not young.
- 4 They're old.

### **hats**

- 1 Look at those hats.
- 2 Are they new?
- 3 They're not new.
- 4 They're old.

### **policemen**

- 1 Look at those policemen.
- 2 Are they short?
- 3 They're not short.
- 4 They're tall.

### **trousers**

- 1 Look at those trousers.
- 2 Are they long?
- 3 They're not long.
- 4 They're short.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第20课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

# 21

## Words

/gɪv/

**give v.**

give me five.

give me a hug.

/wʌn/

**one**

/wɪtʃ/

**which**

Which one?

|     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| I   | me  | my   |
| you | you | your |
| he  | him | his  |
| she | her | her  |
| it  | it  | its  |

## Grammar

give sb. sth.

give me a pen.

**money**

give \_ your money. Please!

**umbrella**

give \_ your ticket. Please!

**ticket**

give \_ your ticket. Please!

**passport**

give \_ her passport. Please!

**homework**

绿皮书 第21课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/'empti/***empty adj.**

This is \_ empty house. a/an

*/fʊl/***full**

This case is full.

*/la:dʒ/ /'mi:dɪəm/***large medium**

Give me a medium cup/one.

*/'lɪtl/***little**

This is a little girl.

*/ʃa:p/ /naɪf/***sharp knife**

This is a sharp knife.

*/blʌnt/***blunt**

This is a blunt knife.

*/smɔ:l/ /bɪg/***small big**

Is that a dog? It's so small.

Is that a dog? It's so big.

*/bɒks/***box**

Give me a box please.

Which one? That little one?

No, not that little one. This big one.

*/glɑ:s/***glass**

Give me a glass please.

Which one? That full one?

No, not that full one. This empty one.

*/kʌp/***cup**

Give me a cup please.

Which one? This dirty one?

No, not this dirty one. That clean one.

*/'bɒtl/***bottle**

Give me a bottle please.

Which one? This large one?

No, not this large one. That small one.

*/tɪn/***tin**

Give me a tin please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

*/naɪf/***knife**

Give me a knife please.

Which one? That blunt one?

No, not that blunt one. This sharp one.

*/fɔ:k/***fork**

Give me a fork please.

Which one? That small one?

No, not that small one. This large one.

*/spu:n/***spoon**

Give me a spoon please.

Which one? This new one?

No, not this new one. That old one.

**homework**

绿皮书 第22课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ɒn/ /ʃelf/***on shelf**

on the shelf

The book is on the shelf.

Is the book on the shelf?

*/desk/***desk**

The books are on the desk.

Are the books on the desk?

Where are the books?

Give me some books, please.

Which ones?

The ones on the desk.

*/teɪbl/***table**

The bottle is on the table.

Is the bottle on the table?

Where is the bottle?

Give me a bottle, please.

Which one?

The one on the table.

*/pleɪt/***plate**

The plates are on the table.

Are the plates on the table?

Where are the plates?

Give me some plates, please.

Which ones?

The ones on the table.

*/'kʌbəd/***cupboard**

The cup is on the cupboard.

Is the cup on the cupboard?

Where is the cup?

Give me a cup, please.

Which one?

The one on the cupboard.

*/'sɪgəret/***cigarette**

The cigarettes are on the plate.

Are the cigarettes on the plate?

Where are the cigarettes?

Give me a cigarette, please.

Which one?

The one on the plate.

*/telɪvɪʒən/***television TV**

The television is on the desk.

Is the television on the desk?

Where is the television?

*/flɔ:/***floor carpet cup**

The woman is on the floor.

Is the woman on the floor?

Where is the woman?

*/'dresɪŋ/***dressing table**

The dressing table is on the floor.

Is the dressing table on the floor?

Where is the dressing table?

*/mægə'zi:n/***magazine**

The magazines are on the shelf.

Are the magazines on the shelf?

Where are the magazines?

Give me some magazines, please.

Which ones?

The ones on the shelf.

*/bed/***bed**

They are on the bed.

Are they on the bed?

Where are they?

*/'nju:speɪpər/***newspaper**

The newspapers are on the floor.

Are the newspapers on the floor?

Where are the newspapers?

Give me some newspapers, please.

Which ones?

The ones on the floor.

*/'stəriəʊ/***stereo**

The stereo is on the floor.

Is the stereo on the floor?

Where is the stereo?

Where 特殊疑问句

含义：哪里？

特殊疑问句 =

特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句  
(去掉答案)

My book is on the shelf.

you – you

Is my book on the shelf?

we – us

Where is my book?

they – them

give sb. sth.

**food**

give \_ some food. Please!

**water**

give \_ some water. Please!

**homework**

绿皮书 23/24 课写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

看图造句\*10

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/mɪsɪz/***Mrs.**

Mr. &amp; Mrs. Smith

*/'kɪtʃən/***kitchen**

in the kitchen

The table is in the kitchen.

Is the table in the kitchen?

Where is the table?

*/rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtə/***refrigerator**

The refrigerator is in the kitchen.

一般+否定+特殊

*/raɪt/ /left/***right left**

on the left

on the right

*/i'lɛktrɪk/***electric adj.***/'kʊkə/***cooker**

This is Leo's new cooker.

Is this Leo's new cooker? Whose

The new cooker is in the kitchen.

Is the new cooker in the kitchen? Where

*/mɪdɪl/***middle***/əvəl/ /ru:m/***of room**

in the middle of the room

The table is in the middle of the room.

Where is the table?

## Grammar

某地有某物/人

肯定句: There be+a/an+某物+地点

There is a table in the middle of the room.

There is an electric cooker in the kitchen.

否定句: There be+not+a/an+某物 + 地点

There isn't an electric cooker in this room.

一般疑问句: be 提句首

Is there an electric cooker in this room?

## homework

参考自家厨房，利用 there be 句型造句20个

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T :Is Mrs. Smith's kitchen large?  
S:No, it isn't.

2 T: Is Mrs. Smith's kitchen small?  
S:Yes, it is.

3 T: Is there a refrigerator in the kitchen?  
S:Yes, there is.

4 T: What colour is the refrigerator?  
S:White.

5 T: Where is the refrigerator?  
S:On the right.

6 T: Is there a stereo in the kitchen?  
S:No, there isn't.

7 T: What colour is the electric cooker?  
S:Blue.

8 T: Where is the cooker?  
S:On the left .

9 T: Is there a table in the kitchen?  
S:Yes, there is.

10 T: Where is the table?  
S:In the middle of the room.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if the refrigerator is white.  
S: Is the refrigerator white?  
T: What colour...?  
S: What colour is the refrigerator?

4 T: Ask me if the cooker is on the left.  
S: Is the cooker on the left?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is the cooker?

2 T: Ask me if the refrigerator is on the right.  
S: Is the refrigerator on the right?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is the refrigerator?

5 T: Ask me if the bottle is on the table.  
S: Is the bottle on the table?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is the bottle?

3 T: Ask me if the cooker is blue.  
S: Is the cooker blue?  
T: What colour...?  
S: What colour is the cooker?

### homework

绿皮书 第25课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵读

参考自己的家，尝试用 there be 造20个句子，不会的单词请查词典

**clean cup**

- 1 Is there a clean cup on the floor?  
 2 No, there isn't one on the floor.  
 3 There's a clean one on the table.

**large box**

- 1 Is there a large box on the shelf?  
 2 No, there isn't one on the shelf.  
 3 There's a large one on the floor.

**sharp knife**

- 1 Is there a sharp knife on the tin?  
 2 No, there isn't one on the tin.  
 3 There's a sharp one on the plate.

**empty glass**

- 1 Is there an empty glass in the refrigerator?  
 2 No, there isn't one in the refrigerator.  
 3 There's an empty one in the cupboard.

**dirty fork**

- 1 Is there a dirty fork on the plate?  
 2 No, there isn't one on the plate.  
 3 There's a dirty one on the tin.

**full bottle**

- 1 Is there a full bottle in the cupboard?  
 2 No, there isn't one in the cupboard.  
 3 There's a full one in the refrigerator.

**blunt pencil**

- 1 Is there a blunt pencil on the table?  
 2 No, there isn't one on the table.  
 3 There's a blunt one on the desk.

**small spoon**

- 1 Is there a small spoon in the glass?  
 2 No, there isn't one in the glass.  
 3 There's a small one in the cup.

**homework**

绿皮书 第26课的写作练习

参考自家小区街道，用 there be 造句20个句子，不会的单词自行查阅词典

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'lɪvɪŋ/***living room**

in the living room

This is my living room.

There is a table in the living room.

Is there a table in the living room?

*/nɪə/***near prep.**

The man is near the woman.

Is the man near the woman?

Where is the man?

*/'wɪndəʊ/***window n.**

Windows

The woman is near the window.

Is the woman near the window?

Where is the woman?

*/'a:m tʃeə/***armchair**

There are two armchairs in the living room.

*/dɔ:/***door**

near the door

The boy is near the door.

Is the boy near the door?

Where is the boy?

*/'pɪktʃə/***picture**

There are some pictures near the TV.

*/wɔ:l/***wall**

Berlin Wall

*/wɔ:l/***wall**

Berlin Wall

The pictures are on the wall.

There are some pictures on the wall.

## Grammar

How many 特殊疑问句

含义：多少

**How many**

1 There are three armchairs in the living room.

2 Are there three armchairs in the living room?

3 How many armchairs are there in the living room?

**How many**

1 There are three cats in the picture.

2 Are there three cats in the picture?

3 How many cats are there in the picture?

## How many

- 1 There are four windows in my living room.
- 2 Are there four windows in your living room?
- 3 How many windows are there in your living room?

## How many

- 1 There are three students in my class.
- 2 Are there three students in your class ?
- 3 How many students are there in your class?

### homework

参考自己客厅，用 there be句 型与 How many 造句(30句) 不会的单词请查阅词典  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点 (Learning pyramid + study-test)

## Story + Grammar

### There are ...

There are+some+n.s+地点

There are some chairs in the middle of the room.

There are+not+any+n.s+地点

There aren't any chairs in the middle of the room.

Are there+any+n.s+地点?

Are there any chairs in the middle of the room?

some VS any

同：“一些”

异: some 肯定句 VS any 否定 / 疑问句

There are \_\_ pens on the table.

There aren't \_\_ students in the classroom.

Are there \_\_ boxes in the kitchen?

## Comprehension

1 T: Is Mrs. Smith's living room small?  
S: No, it isn't. It's large.

2 T: Is there a television in the room?  
S: Yes, there is.

3 T: Where is the television?  
S: It's near the window.

4 T: Are there any magazines in the room?  
S: Yes, there are.

5 T: Are the magazines on the floor?  
S: No, they aren't. They're on the television.

6 T: Are there any newspapers?  
S: Yes, there are.

7 T: Is there a stereo in the room?  
S: Yes, there is.

8 T: Where is the stereo?  
S: It's near the door.

9 T: Are there any books or magazines on the stereo?  
S: No, there aren't. There are some books.

10 T: Are there any pictures on the wall?  
S: Yes, there are.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if the television is near the window.  
S: Is the television near the window?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is the television?

2 T: Ask me if the magazines are on the television.  
S: Are the magazines on the television?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where are the magazines?

3 T: Ask me if there is a stereo in the room.  
S: Is there a stereo in the room?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is the stereo?

4 T: Ask me if the books are on the stereo.  
S: Are the books on the stereo?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where are the books?

5 T: Ask me if the pictures are on the wall.  
S: Are the pictures on the wall?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where are the pictures?

### homework

绿皮书 第27课的写作练习 文章跟读至熟读成诵读

原文变否定句/一般疑问句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

/'traʊzəz/

## trousers

My trousers are in the living room.  
Are my trousers in the living room?  
Where are my trousers?

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ books on the dressing table?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ books.
- 3 There are \_\_ cigarettes.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're near that box.

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ ties on the floor?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ ties.
- 3 There are \_\_ shoes.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're near the bed.

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ glasses on the cupboard?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ glasses.
- 3 There are \_\_ bottles.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're near those tins.

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ newspapers on the shelf?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ newspapers.
- 3 There are \_\_ tickets.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're in that handbag.

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ forks on the table?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ forks.
- 3 There are \_\_ knives.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're in that box.

### some VS any

- 1 Are there \_\_ cups near the television?
- 2 No, there aren't \_\_ cups.
- 3 There are \_\_ books.
- 4 Where are they?
- 5 They're near those bottles.

### homework

绿皮书 第28课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ʃʌt/***shut v.**

shut the door

*/'bedru:m/***bedroom**

Is this your bedroom?

Whose bedroom is this?

There is \_\_\_ in your bedroom?

*/ʌn'taɪdi/***untidy adj.**

This room is untidy.

*/'əʊpen/***open v.**

open the window

*/eə/***air v.**

air the room

*/pʊt/***put**

put it on the table

*/klaʊðz/***clothes**

Where are my clothes?

*/'wɔ:dreʊb/***wardrobe**

There is a wardrobe in the bedroom.

*/dʌst/***dust v.**

dust the shelf

*/swi:p/***sweep v.**

sweep the floor

**Comprehension**

1 T :Is Mrs. Jones in the living room?

S:No, she isn't.

2 T :Is Mrs. Jones in the bedroom?

S:Yes, she is.

3 T :Is Amy in the bedroom, too?

S:Yes, she is.

4 T :Is the bedroom tidy?

S:No, it isn't. It's very untidy.

5 T :Are these clothes in the wardrobe?

S:No, they aren't.

6 T :Is the floor clean?

S:No, it isn't. It's dirty.

**Asking questions**

1 T :Ask me if the bedroom is very untidy.

S:Is the bedroom very untidy?

T:Yes, it is.

2 T:Ask me if Mrs. Jones is in the kitchen.

S:Is Mrs. Jones in the kitchen?

T:Where...?

S:Where is Mrs. Jones?

3 T :Ask me if Amy is in the bedroom.  
S: Is Amy in the bedroom?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where is Amy?

5 T :Ask me if the clothes are in the wardrobe.  
S: Are the clothes in the wardrobe?  
T: No, they aren't.

4 T :Ask me if the dressing table is very dirty.  
S: Is the dressing table very dirty?  
T: Yes, it is.

### homework

绿皮书 第29课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵读

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 30

## Words

/'empti/  
**empty v.**  
empty the glass

/ri:d/  
**read v.**  
read the book

/'ʃa:pən/  
**sharpen v.**  
sharpen the knife

**put on**  
put on your coat

**take off**  
take off your watch

/tɔ:n/  
**turn on**  
turn on the TV

/tɔ:n/  
**turn off**  
turn off your phone

### make

- 1 The beds are untidy.
- 2 Make the beds.

### open

- 1 It's a hot day and the windows are shut.
- 2 Open the windows.

### dust

- 1 The dressing table is dusty.
- 2 Dust the dressing table.

### clean

- 1 The bedroom carpet is dirty.
- 2 Clean the bedroom carpet.

### dust/clean

- 1 The living room is untidy.
- 2 Dust / Clean the living room.

### empty

- 1 There are old clothes in the wardrobe.
- 2 Empty the wardrobe.

### sweep / clean

- 1 The kitchen floor is dirty.
- 2 Sweep / Clean the kitchen floor.

### sharpen

- 1 The pencils in the desk are blunt.
- 2 Sharpen the pencils in the desk.

### empty

- 1 There is some old milk in a bottle in the refrigerator.
- 2 Empty the milk bottle.

### homework

绿皮书 第30课的写作练习

L30 课后练习

尽情期待接下来令人兴奋的动词时态

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

时&态  
动作发生的时间  
动作的状态

现在进行时  
含义：一个动作现在正在进行

### 现在进行时：肯定句

结构：主+am/is/are+doing  
(v.ing 现在分词)

am/is/are+doing

- 1 v.+ing: eating/opening/reading
- 2 She is reading a book.

am/is/are+doing

1 去e+ing(e不发音)

2 come-coming/make-making/  
dance-dancing

3 They are dancing.

am/is/are+doing

1 双写 + ing

2 run-running/sit-sitting/swim-  
swimming

3 They are running on the street.

### 现在进行时：否定句

结构：主+am/is/are+not+doing

She is not reading books.

She is not making the bed.

They are not swimming.

### 现在进行时：一般疑问句

结构: am/is/are(提句首)+主+doing?

1 Is she opening the door?

2 Yes, she is.

1 Are they sitting on the floor?

2 Yes, they are.

1 Is she turning off the phone?

2 Yes, she is.

### 现在进行时：特殊疑问句

结构: What+am/is/are+主+doing?

1 What are they doing?

2 Are they dancing?

3 Yes, they are dancing.

1 What are they doing?

2 Are they reading a book?

3 Yes, they are reading a book.

1 What is she doing?

2 Is she running?

3 Yes, she is running.

/'gɑ:dən/

## garden

There are some chairs in the garden.  
Are there any chairs in the garden?

/'ʌndə/

## under prep.

There is a cat under the table.  
What is the cat doing?  
I don't know.

/tri:/

## tree

There are some children under the tree.  
What are they doing?  
They are reading books.

/klaɪm/

## climb v.

The boy is climbing the tree.  
Is the boy climbing the tree?  
What is the boy climbing?

/hu:/

## who

Who am I?  
Who is he?

/rʌn/

## run v.

The man is running.  
Is the man running?

/græ:s/

## grass n.

The man is running on the grass.  
Is the man running on the grass?  
Where is the man running?

/'a:fte/

## after prep.

The dog is running after the cat.  
Is the dog running after the cat?

/e'krɒs/

## across prep.

What are they doing?  
They are walking across the street.  
Are they walking across the street?

## homework

观察您社区中，每个人在干什么？造句30句（肯/否/一般/特殊）

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Story + Grammar

### climb

- 1 They are climbing the wall.
- 2 Who are climbing the wall?

### who 特殊疑问句

Tim is climbing the tree.

对主语提问，直接用特殊疑问词替代主语  
Who is climbing the tree?

### take off

- 1 He is taking off the coat.
- 2 Who is taking off the coat?

### empty

- 1 He is emptying the box.
- 2 Who is emptying the box?

1 T :Are Jack and Jean in the garden?  
S:No, they aren't.

2 T :Are they in the kitchen?  
S:Yes, they are.

3 T :Is Sally in the garden?  
S:Yes, she is.

4 T :Is Tim in the living room?  
S:No, he isn't.(He's in the garden.)

5 T :Who's sitting under the tree?  
S:Sally is.

6 T :What's Tim doing?  
S:He's climbing the tree.

7 T :Where's the dog?  
S:It's in the garden.

8 T :Is the dog climbing the tree?  
S:No, it isn't.

9 T :What's the dog doing?  
S:It's running across the grass.

## Asking questions

1 T :Ask me if Sally is in the garden.  
S:Is Sally in the garden?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is Sally?

2 T :Ask me if Sally is sitting under the tree.  
S:Is Sally sitting under the tree?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is Sally sitting?

3 T :Ask me if Tim is climbing the tree.  
S:Is Tim climbing the tree?  
T:What...?  
S:What is Tim climbing?

4 T :Ask me if the dog is in the garden.  
S:Is the dog in the garden?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where's the dog?

5 T :Ask me if the dog is running across the grass. S:Is the dog running across the grass?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is the dog running?

### homework

绿皮书 第31课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

观察家人，用 be+doing 造句 (30句)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/taɪp/***type v.**

What are they doing?  
Are they reading books?  
They are typing.

*/'leɪtə/***letter n.**

What is she doing?  
Is she looking at a picture?  
She is typing a letter.

*/'ba:.skɪt/***basket n.**

This is an empty basket.  
Whose basket is this?

*/i:t/***eat v.**

What is she doing?  
Is she drinking?  
She is eating.

*/beən/***bone n.**

What is the dog doing?  
Is the dog drinking water?  
The dog is eating a bone.

*/kli:n/***clean v.**

What are they doing?  
Are they playing?  
They are cleaning the kitchen.

*/tu:θ/***tooth-teeth n.**

What is he doing?  
Is he eating?  
He is cleaning his teeth.

*/kʊk/ /mi:l/***cook v. meal n.**

What are they doing?  
Are they cleaning the table?  
They are cooking a meal.

*/drɪŋk/***drink v.**

What is she doing?  
Is she cleaning her teeth?  
She is drinking water.

*/mɪlk/***milk n.**

What is she doing?  
Is she drinking water?  
She is drinking milk.

*/tæp/***tap n.**

What is he doing?  
Is he cleaning his teeth?  
He is drinking tap water.

### be+v.ing

- 1 What is she doing ?
- 2 Is she dancing?
- 3 Yes, she is.
- 4 She is dancing.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is Jack putting on his shirt?
- 2 No, he isn't putting on his shirt.
- 3 What's he doing?
- 4 He's reading a magazine.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is the dog drinking its milk?
- 2 No, it isn't drinking its milk.
- 3 What's it doing?
- 4 It's eating a bone.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is your sister emptying the basket?
- 2 No, she isn't emptying the basket.
- 3 What's she doing?
- 4 She's looking at a picture.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is Tim cleaning his teeth?
- 2 No, he isn't cleaning his teeth.
- 3 What's he doing?
- 4 He's sharpening a pencil.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is Nicola making the bed?
- 2 No, she isn't making the bed.
- 3 What's she doing?
- 4 She's typing a letter.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is the cat eating?
- 2 No, it isn't eating.
- 3 What's it doing?
- 4 It's drinking its milk.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is Sally dusting the dressing table?
- 2 No, she isn't dusting the dressing table.
- 3 What's she doing?
- 4 She's shutting the door.

### am/is/are+doing

- 1 Is Mrs. Smith turning on the light?
- 2 No, she isn't turning on the light.
- 3 What's she doing?
- 4 She's opening the window.

### homework

绿皮书 第32课的写作练习

总结 L29 L30 L31 L32的动词，练习造句 (四句型)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/flaɪ/***fly v.**

What is Iron man doing?

Iron man is flying.

*/deɪ/***day**

It is a fine day.

*/skai/***sky**

The bird is flying in the sky.

*/klaʊd/***cloud**

There are some clouds in the sky.

*/sʌn/    /ʃaɪn/***sun n. shine v.**

The sun is shining in the sky.

*/wɪð/***with**

They are with their mom.

Are they with their mom?

*/fæməli/***family**

The boy is cleaning his teeth with his family.

*/wo:k/***walk**

They are walking across the street.

*/əʊvər/***over prep.**

The bird is flying over the city.

*/brɪdʒ/    /bo:t/***bridge n. boat n.**

The boat is under the bridge.

There is a boat under the bridge.

The boat is going under the bridge.

*/rɪvə/***river**

There are some boats on the river.

*/ʃɪp/***ship**

The ship is going under the bridge.

*/eərəpleɪn/***aeroplane**

There are some clouds in the sky.

The sun is shining.

The plane is flying in the sky.

The plane is flying over the bridge.

**homework**

单词混搭造句 5句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T :Is it a cold day today?  
S:No, it isn't.

2 T :Is it a fine day today?  
S:Yes, it is.

3 T :Are there any clouds in the sky?  
S:Yes, there are.

4 T :Where is Mr. Jones?  
S:Mr. Jones is with his family.

5 T :Who is walking over the bridge?  
S:Mr. Jones and his family are.

6 T :Are there any boats on the river?  
S:Yes, there are.

7 T :What are Mr. Jones and his wife doing? S:They are looking at the boats.

8 T :What is Sally doing?  
S:She's looking at a big ship.

9 T :What is Tim doing?  
S:He's looking at an aeroplane.

10 T :What is the aeroplane doing?  
S: Flying over the river.

## Asking questions

1 T :Ask me if they are walking over the bridge. S:Are they walking over the bridge?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where are they walking?

2 T :Ask me if Sally is looking at a big ship.  
S:Is Sally looking at a big ship?  
T:What...?  
S:What is Sally looking at?

3 T :Ask me if the ship is going under the bridge. S:Is the ship going under the bridge?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is the ship going?

4 T :Ask me if Tom is looking at an aeroplane.  
S:Is Tom looking at an aeroplane?  
T:What...?  
S:What is Tom looking at?

5 T :Ask me if the aeroplane is flying over the bridge.  
S:Is the aeroplane flying over the bridge? T:Where...?  
S:Where is the aeroplane flying?

### homework

绿皮书 第33课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/sli:p/***sleep-sleeping**

What is the baby doing?

The baby is sleeping with his father.

*/ʃeɪv/***shave-shaving**

What is he doing?

He is shaving.

*/kraɪ/***cry-crying**

Is the baby eating?

He is crying.

*/wɒʃ/***wash-washing**

The girl is washing hands with her mom.

*/weɪt/***wait-waiting**

What are they doing?

They are waiting for a bus.

*/dʒʌmp/***jump-jumping**

Who is this?

This is Leo.

Look, he is flying. Just kidding.

He is jumping.

**Practices****What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the cooks doing?
- 2 Are they washing dishes?
- 3 No, they aren't washing dishes.
- 4 They're cooking.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the children doing?
- 2 Are they crying?
- 3 No, they aren't crying.
- 4 They're sleeping.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the men doing?
- 2 Are they cooking?
- 3 No, they aren't cooking.
- 4 They're shaving.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the children doing?
- 2 Are they sleeping?
- 3 No, they aren't sleeping.
- 4 They're crying.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the dogs doing?
- 2 Are they drinking milk?
- 3 No, they aren't drinking milk.
- 4 They're eating ice creams.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are they doing?
- 2 Are they airing the room?
- 3 No, they aren't airing the room.
- 4 They're typing letters.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the children doing?
- 2 Are they looking at a picture?
- 3 No, they aren't looking at a picture.
- 4 They're doing their homework.

**What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are they doing?
- 2 Are they sweeping the floor?
- 3 No, they aren't sweeping the floor.
- 4 They're washing dishes.

### **What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the birds doing?
- 2 Are they sitting on a tree?
- 3 No, they aren't sitting on a tree.
- 4 They're flying over the river.

### **What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the men and the women doing?
- 2 Are they waiting for a bus?
- 3 No, they aren't waiting for a bus.
- 4 They're walking over the bridge.

### **What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the men and the women doing?
- 2 Are they walking over the bridge?
- 3 No, they aren't walking over the bridge.
- 4 They're waiting for a bus.

### **What+be+主语+doing?**

- 1 What are the boys and the girls doing?
- 2 Are they climbing a tree?
- 3 No, they aren't climbing a tree.
- 4 They're jumping off the wall.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第34课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/ˈfəʊtəgræfɪ/

**photograph photos**

This is a photo of my parents.

They are sitting under the tree.

/ˈvɪlɪdʒ/

**village**

This is a small village. L1

Where is the village? L5

We are walking in the village. L31

There are some houses in the village. L25

总结+造句

/ˈvæli/

**valley**

There is a village in the valley.

Is there a village in the valley?

/hɪl/

**hill**

There is a village on the hill.

There are some trees on the hill.

/əˈnʌðə/

**another**

Look, there is another village in this valley.

/waɪf/ /ˈhʌzbənd/

**wife husband**

The husband is sitting beside his wife.

/bæŋk/

**bank**

river bank

/ˈwɔː.tə/

**water**

She is drinking water.

Is she drinking water?

What is she drinking?

/swɪm/

**swim**

What is the man doing?

The man is swimming in the river.

Is the man swimming in the river?

Where is the man swimming?

/ˈbɪldɪŋ/

**building**

There are some buildings in the city.

They are walking under the building.

/pɑ:k/

**park**

What are they doing?

They are walking in the park.

## Grammar

prep. 介词

/bɪˈtwi:n/

**between prep.**

The baby is sleeping between his parents.

/ɪnˈtu:/

**into out of**

What is his wife doing?

She is walking into a shop.

What are the children doing?

The children are running out of school.

/əˈlɒŋ/ /əˈkrɒs/

**along across**

What are they doing?

They are walking along the river.

What are they doing?

They are swimming across the river.

/bɪ'saɪd/

## **beside near**

The left man is sitting beside the woman.  
The right man is sitting near the woman.  
What is her daughter doing?  
She is reading a book beside the window.  
Where are they?  
They are near the H building.  
What are they doing?  
They are waiting for a bus.

## **under over**

What is the ship doing?  
The ship is going under the bridge.  
What are the planes doing?  
They are flying over the bridge.

## **in on**

What is Susan doing?  
She is sitting on the floor.  
What are your grandparents doing?  
They are sitting in the park.

## **off onto**

What are they doing?  
They are jumping off the wall.  
What is he doing?  
He is jumping onto his car.

## **homework**

观察周围，用am/is/are doing + 介词 造句(5句)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T :Is our village in a valley?  
S: Yes, it is.

2 T: Is our village on a hill?  
S: No, it isn't.

3 T: Where is our village?  
S: It's between two hills.

4 T: Is our village on a river?  
S: Yes, it is.

5 T: Who is walking along the banks of  
the river?  
S: My wife and I are.

6 T: Who is in the water?  
S: A boy is.

7 T: What is the boy doing?  
S: He is swimming across the river.

8 T: Where is the school building?  
S: It's beside a park.

9 T: Where is the park?  
S: It is on the right.

10 T: Where are some of the children  
going?  
S: They're going into the park.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if this is a photograph of  
our village. S: Is this a photograph of  
our village?  
T: What ...?  
S: What is this a photograph of?

2 T: Ask me if our village is in a valley.  
S: Is our village in a valley?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is our village?

3 T: Ask me if my wife and I are  
walking along the banks of the river.  
S: Are your wife and you walking  
along the banks of the river?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where are your wife and you  
walking?

4 T: Ask me if the boy is swimming  
across the river.  
S: Is the boy swimming across the  
river?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is the boy swimming?

5 T: Ask me if the school building is  
beside the park.  
S: Is the school building beside the  
park?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is the school building?

### homework

绿皮书 第35课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the man going?
- 2 He's going into the shop.
- 3 Is he going into the shop?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the woman going?
- 2 She's going out of the shop.
- 3 Is she going out of the shop?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the boy sitting?
- 2 He's sitting beside his mother.
- 3 Is he sitting beside his mother?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the boy walking?
- 2 He's walking between two policemen.
- 3 Is he walking between two policemen?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the girl sitting?
- 2 She's sitting near the tree.
- 3 Is she sitting near the tree?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the aeroplane flying?
- 2 It's flying under the bridge.
- 3 Is it flying under the bridge?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where are the man and the woman walking?
- 2 They're walking across the street.
- 3 Are they walking across the street?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where is that cat running?
- 2 It's running along the wall.
- 3 Is it running along the wall?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where are the children jumping?
- 2 They're jumping off the wall.
- 3 Are they jumping off the wall?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where's the aeroplane flying?
- 2 It's flying over the bridge.
- 3 Is it flying over the bridge?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where are they sitting?
- 2 They're sitting on the grass.
- 3 Are they sitting on the grass?

**be + v.ing**

- 1 Where are they reading?
- 2 They're reading in the living room.
- 3 Are they reading in the living room?

**homework**

绿皮书 第36课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

时&态  
动作发生的时间  
动作的状态

一般将来时  
含义：计划打算

### 一般将来时：肯定句

结构:主+am/is/are+going to do(v.原型)  
gonna do [口语]

am/is/are+going to do

He is going to shave.

gonna do

He is going to jump off the building.  
gonna do

He is going to wash the cup.  
gonna do

### 一般将来时：否定句

结构:主+am/is/are+not+going to do  
(v.原型)

I am not going to wash the dishes.

I am not going to cook.

I am not going to make the bed.

I am not going to sweep the floor.

I am not going to clean the kitchen.

She is not going to clean her teeth.

She is not going to drink that.

### 一般将来时：一般疑问句

结构: Am/Is/Are(提句首)+主+going to  
do (v.原型)

Is she going to swim?

Yes, she is going to swim.

Are they going to eat?

Yes, they are going to eat.

Is he going to drink coffee?

Yes, he is going to drink coffee?

### 一般将来时：特殊疑问句

结构: What am/is/are+主+going to  
do?

What is she going to do?

Is she going to eat?

No, she is going to clean her teeth.

What is she going to do?

Is she going to dance?

No, she is going to clean the living  
room.

What is she going to do?

Is she going to cook a meal?

No, she is going t

*/wɜ:k/***work v.**

What are they doing?  
Are they eating?  
They are working in the office.

*/hɑ:d/***hard adv.**

What is she doing?  
Look, she is working hard.

*/meɪk/***make v.**

make my homework?  
多模仿少创造  
make a shelf  
What is he doing?  
He is making a bookshelf.  
What is he going to do?  
He is going to make a bookshelf.

*/'bʊkkɛɪs/***bookcase**

book + case  
book + shelf = bookshelf  
Are you going to make a bookcase?  
What are you doing, now?  
I am making a bookcase.

*/'hæmə/***hammer n.**

+v. (往前翻)  
Whose hammer is this? L11  
What colour is your hammer? L13  
Is this your hammer? L1  
There is a hammer on the floor. L25  
give me a hammer, please. L21  
He is washing that hammer. L31  
总结关键语法结构

*/peɪnt/***paint v.**

What are they doing?  
They are painting the wall.

*/pɪŋk/***pink**

Give me a hammer, please.  
Which one?  
That pink one please.

*/'feɪvərɪt/***favourite adj.**

Whose umbrella is this?  
Is this your umbrella?  
Yes, this is my umbrella.  
This is my favourite umbrella.  
He is washing his umbrella.  
She is going to clean her umbrella.

**homework**

观察生活，利用 going to 造句 (4句型\*5句)  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**for sb.**

- 1 This apple is for you.
- 2 Is this apple for me?
- 3 Who is this apple for?

**for sb.**

- 1 This umbrella is for you.
- 2 Is this umbrella for me?
- 3 Who is this umbrella for?

**for sb.**

- 1 This is for my mother.
- 2 Is this for your mother?
- 3 Who is this for?

## Comprehension

---

1 T:Who is working hard?  
S:George is.

6 T:Is George going to paint it white?  
S:No, he isn't.

2 T:What is George doing?  
S:He's making a bookcase.

7 T:What colour is George going to  
paint it? S:Pink.

3 T:Who is making a bookcase?  
S:George is.

8 T:Is the bookcase for George?  
S:No, it isn't.

4 T:Which hammer is Dan going to  
give George? S:The big one.

9 T:Is the bookcase for Susan?  
S:Yes, it is.

5 T:What is George going to do now?  
S:He's going to paint the bookcase.

10 T:What is Susan's favourite colour?  
S:Pink.

## Asking questions

---

1 T:Ask me if George is making a  
bookcase.  
S:Is George making a bookcase?  
T:What ...?  
S:What is George making?

3 T:Ask me if he's going to paint it.  
S:Is he going to paint it?  
T:What colour ...?  
S:What colour is he going to paint it?

2 T:Ask me if that hammer is big.  
S:Is that hammer big?  
T:Which hammer ...?  
S:Which hammer is big?

4 T:Ask me if the bookcase is for his  
daughter.  
S:Is the bookcase for his daughter?  
T:Who ...?  
S:Who is the bookcase for?

T: Ask me if pink is her favourite colour.

S: Is pink her favourite colour?

T: What ...?

S: What is her favourite colour?

### homework

绿皮书 第37课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 38

## Words

/'həʊmwɜ:k/

### homework n.

do my homework

What is he doing?

He is doing his homework.

/'lɪsn/

### listen v.

listen to the stereo/music

What are they doing?

They are listening to music.

/dɪʃ/

### dish-dishes

Where is the dish?

give me a dish, please.

There is a dish on the table.

/dɪʃ/

### dish-dishes

He is going to wash the dishes.

Is he going to wash the dishes?

Who is going to wash the dishes?

### shave

1 What are you doing now?

2 Now I'm shaving.

### do

1 What is he doing?

2 He is looking at his homework.

3 What is he going to do?

4 He is going to do his homework.

### listen to

1 What is he doing?

2 He is turning on the stereo.

3 What is he going to do?

4 He is going to listen to music.

### listen to

1 What is she doing now?

2 She is listening to music.

### do

1 What are you doing now?

2 Now we're doing our homework.

### walk-wait for

1 What are they doing?

2 They are walking to the bus stop.

3 What are they going to do?

4 They're going to wait for a bus.

**wait for**

- 1 What are you doing now?
- 2 We're waiting for a bus.

**paint**

- 1 What is he going to do?
- 2 He is going to paint this wall.

**paint**

- 1 What are you doing now?
- 2 We are painting this wall.

**wash**

- 1 What are you going to do?
- 2 I'm going to wash the dishes.

**wash**

- 1 What are they doing now?
- 2 They are washing the dishes.

**homework**

绿皮书 第38课的写作练习

分别用现在进行时&一般将来时造句(4句型\*5)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/frʌnt/***front**

in front of

The man is front of the car.

in the front of

The man is in the front of the car.

*/'keəfəl/***careful**

Be careful!

*/və:z/ /veɪz/***vase vase n.**

v. paint; wash; clean; climb; empty; put  
 am/is/are+doing  
 am/is/are+going to do

*/drɒp/***drop v.**

I am going to drop that. Catch it.

Don't drop it.

Don't cry.

Don't eat on the bus.

Don't+v.

*/flaʊə/***flower n.**

v.

He is going to eat that flower.

The cat is eating that flower.

There are some flowers in the park.

**Story + Grammar****do with sth.**

What is he going to do with that refrigerator?

He is going to clean it.

**do with sth.**

What are you going to do with that old car?

I'm going to give Leo the car.

**do with sth.**

What are you going to do with those dirty dishes ?

I'm gonna clean them.

**give sb. sth. = give sth. to sb.**

1 give me the book.

2 give the book to me.

3 give it to me.

**give sb. sth. = give sth. to sb.**

1 give me the vase.

2 give the vase to me.

3 give it to me.

**give sb. sth. = give sth. to sb.**

1 give me those flowers.

2 give those flowers to me.

3 give them to me.

- 1 T: What is Penny going to do with the vase?  
S: She's going to put it on the table.
- 2 T: Is Sam going to put the vase on the table?  
S: No, he isn't.
- 3 T: What is Sam going to do with the vase?  
S: He's going to put it in front of the window.
- 4 T: Look at Picture 7. Where is the vase now?  
S: On the shelf. (or It's on the shelf.)
- 5 T: Is it a lovely vase?  
S: Yes, it is.
- 6 T: Are those flowers lovely?  
S: Yes, they are.

## Asking questions

- 1 T: Ask me if Penny is going to put the vase on the table.  
S: Is Penny going to put the vase on the table?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is Penny going to put the vase?
- 2 T: Ask me if Sam is taking the vase from Penny.  
S: Is Sam taking the vase from Penny?  
T: What ...?  
S: What is Sam taking from Penny?
- 3 T: Ask me if he's going to put it in front of the window.  
S: Is he going to put it in front of the window?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is he going to put it?
- 4 T: Ask me if he's putting it on the shelf.  
S: Is he putting it on the shelf?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is he putting it?

### homework

绿皮书 第39课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/ʃəʊ/***show**

show me your passport.  
 show me your ticket.  
 show sb. sth.=show sth. to sb.  
 What are you going to do with your passport?  
 I am going to show it to Leo.

*/sɛnd/***send**

send me a postcard.  
 send me a letter.  
 send sb. sth.=send sth. to sb.  
 What are you going to do with the postcard?  
 I am going to send it to Leo.

*/teɪk/***take**

take me some clothes.  
 take me some coffee.  
 take sb. sth.=take sth. to sb.  
 What are you going to do with the coffee?  
 I am going to take it to Leo.

**Practices****put on**

- 1 Are you going to put on your hat?
- 2 Yes, I'm going to put it on.
- 3 Are you going to take off your hat?
- 4 No, I'm not going to take it off.

**take off**

- 1 Are you going to take off your shoes?
- 2 Yes, I'm going to take them off.

**turn on**

- 1 Are you going to turn on the light?
- 2 Yes, I'm going to turn it on.
- 3 Are you going to turn off the light?
- 4 No, I'm not going to turn it off.

**turn off**

- 1 Are you going to turn off the stereo?
- 2 Yes, I'm going to turn it off.
- 3 Are you going to turn on the stereo?
- 4 No, I'm not going to turn it on.

**put on**

- 1 Are you going to put on your suit?
- 2 Yes, I'm going to put it on.

**homework**

绿皮书 第40课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

可数名词 cn.

- 1 There is a pen on the table.
- 2 There are some pens on the table.

不可数名词 un.

- 1 There is a piece of cheese on the table.
- 2 There is some cheese on the table.

如何判断可数与否?

- 1 液体milk/ 气体air
- 2 组成过小:sand/grass/hair
- 3 总称:food/fruit/money
- 4 同一个单词, 含义不同
- 5 字典

## Words

/tʃi:z/

### cheese

a piece of cheese

/bred/

### bread

a piece of bread  
a loaf of bread

/seɔ:p/

### soap

a bar of soap  
some soap

/tʃɒkələti/

### chocolate

a bar of chocolate

/'ʃʊgə/

### sugar

a pound of sugar

/'kɒfɪ/

### coffee

a cup of coffee

/ti:/

### tea

half a pound of tea  
half pound

/tə'bækəʊ/

### tobacco

a tin of tobacco  
some tobacco

## Comprehension

1 T: Look at number 2.  
Is there a piece of cheese on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

2 T: Look at number 3.  
Is there a loaf of bread on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

3 T: Look at number 4.  
Is there a bar of soap on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

4 T: Look at number 5.  
Is there any chocolate on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

5 T: Look at number 6.  
Is there a bottle of milk on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

6 T: Look at number 6 again.  
Is there any milk in the bottle?  
S: Yes, there is.

7 T: Look at number 7.  
Is there any sugar on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

8 T: Look at number 8.  
Is there any coffee on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

9 T: Look at number 9.  
Is there any tea on the table?  
S: Yes, there is.

10 T: Look at number 10.  
Is there any tobacco in the tin?  
S: Yes, there is.

11 T: Is the tobacco for Penny?  
S: No, it isn't.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if there is a piece of cheese on the table.  
S: Is there a piece of cheese on the table?

2 T: Ask me if there is a bottle of milk on the table.  
S: Is there a bottle of milk on the table?

3 T: Ask me if there is any chocolate on the table.  
S: Is there any chocolate on the table?

4 T: Ask me if there is any coffee on the table.  
S: Is there any coffee on the table?

5 T: Ask me if that tin of tobacco is for Sam.  
S: Is that tin of tobacco for Sam?  
T: Who...for?  
S: Who is that tin of tobacco for?

### homework

绿皮书 第41课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/bɜ:d/***bird** n.

v. ?

单词+句型

**Practices****passport**

- 1 Is there a passport here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one on the table.

**milk**

- 1 Is there any milk here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

**spoon**

- 1 Is there a spoon here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one on the plate.

**tie**

- 1 Is there a tie here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one on the chair.

**bread**

- 1 Is there any bread here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some on the table.

**hammer**

- 1 Is there a hammer here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one on the shelf.

**tea**

- 1 Is there any tea here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some near the cup.

**vase**

- 1 Is there a vase here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one on the stereo.

**suit**

- 1 Is there a suit here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's one in the wardrobe.

**tobacco**

- 1 Is there any tobacco here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some in the tin.

**chocolate**

- 1 Is there any chocolate here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some on the desk.

**cheese**

- 1 Is there any cheese here?  
2 Yes, there is. There's some on the plate.

**homework**

绿皮书 第42课的写作练习

Bird 造句\*10 (总结关键句型)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

情态动词  
can 能

**肯定句：主+can+do (动词原形)**

Birds can fly in the sky.

Dogs can swim in the water.

Cats can climb the wall.

**否定句：主+can+not+do (动词原形)**

cannot=can not=can't

Cats can't read a book.

Elephants can't jump.

Pigs can't look at the sky.

**一般疑问句：**

Can(提句首)+主+do(动词原形)?

Can you help me?

Yes, I can.

Can the dog swim?

Yes, it can.

Can kiwi fly?

No, it can't.

**特殊疑问句：**

What+can+主+do (动词原形)?

What can the bird do?

It can dance.

What can the cat do?

It can climb a tree.

What can the grasshopper do?

It can jump.

## Words

/əvəl / kɔ : s /  
**of course**

/kεtʃ /  
**kettle n.**

v. wash; clean; drop...

He is washing the kettle.

What is she going to do with that kettle?

She is going to give it to Leo.

/bɪ'haɪnd/  
**behind**

in front of

Where is he?

Look, he is standing behind the tree.

/'ti:pɒt/  
**teapot n.**

v. clean

What is she doing?

She is cleaning the teapot.

/naʊ /  
**now**

What are they doing now?

They are dancing.

/faɪnd/

## find v.

Can you see the bird?

I can't find it.

Can you find a job?

I can't find a job.

/boɪl/

## boil v.

The water is boiling.

### homework

描述下动物能做什么 can

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Is Penny going to make the tea?  
S: No, she isn't.

2 T: Is Sam going to make the tea?  
S: Yes, he is.

3 T: Is there any water in the kettle?  
S: Yes, there is.

4 T: Is there any tea in the kettle?  
S: No, there isn't.

5 T: Where is the tea?  
S: It's behind the teapot.

6 T: Can Sam see the tea?  
S: No, he can't.

7 T: Are there any cups on the table?  
S: No, there aren't.

8 T: Where are the cups?  
S: In the cupboard.

9 T: Is the kettle boiling?  
S: Yes, it is.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Sam can make the tea.  
S: Can Sam make the tea?  
T: What ...?  
S: What can Sam make?

2 T: Ask me if the tea is over there.  
S: Is the tea over there?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is the tea?

3 T: Ask me if Sam can see the tea.  
S: Can Sam see the tea?  
T: What ...?  
S: What can Sam see?

4 T: Ask me if the cups are in the cupboard.  
S: Are the cups in the cupboard?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where are the cups?

5 T: Ask me if Sam can find the cups.  
S: Can Sam find the cups?  
T: What ...?  
S: What can Sam find?

# 44

## Practices

### homework

绿皮书 第43课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

### bread

- 1 Is there any bread here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some on the table.

### tea

- 1 Is there any tea here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some in those cups.

### hammers

- 1 Are there any hammers here?
- 2 Yes, there are.
- 3 There are some behind that box.

### cups

- 1 Are there any cups here?
- 2 Yes, there are.
- 3 There are some in front of that kettle.

### milk

- 1 Is there any milk here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some in front of the door.

### chocolate

- 1 Is there any chocolate here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some behind that book.

### soap

- 1 Is there any soap here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some on the cupboard.

### teapots

- 1 Are there any teapots here?
- 2 Yes, there are.
- 3 There are some in the cupboard.

### newspapers

- 1 Are there any newspapers here?
- 2 Yes, there are.
- 3 There are some behind that vase.

### cars

- 1 Are there any cars here?
- 2 Yes, there are.
- 3 There are some in front of that building.

### water

- 1 Is there any water here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some in those glasses.

### coffee

- 1 Is there any coffee here?
- 2 Yes, there is.
- 3 There's some on the table.

### homework

绿皮书 第44课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/bɒs/***boss n.**

Who is that?  
That is my boss.  
Is he your boss?  
Look, our boss is waiting for the bus.

*/'mɪnɪt/***minute**

wait a minute.

*/a:sk/***ask v.**

I am going to ask them.  
Can you ask that for me?  
Sorry, I cannot ask that for you.

*/'hændrətɪŋ/***handwriting n.**

This is my handwriting.  
Is this Leo's handwriting?  
Whose handwriting is this?

*/'terəbəl/***terrible adj.**

terrible handwriting  
His handwriting is terrible.  
Whose handwriting is terrible?

**Comprehension**

1 T: Is the boss in his living room?  
S: No, he isn't.

2 T: Where is the boss?  
S: In his office.

3 T: Who can go into the boss's office?  
S: Bob can.

4 T: Where is Pamela?  
S: She's in her office next door.

5 T: What is the boss going to ask  
Pamela to do?  
S: He's going to ask her to type a  
letter.

6 T: Can Pamela type the letter?  
S: No, she can't.

7 T: What's the matter with the letter?  
S: Pamela can't read it.

8 T: Why can't Pamela read the letter?  
S: Because the boss's handwriting is  
terrible.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Bob can go into the boss's office.

S:Can Bob go into the boss's office?

T:Where...?

S:Where can Bob go?

2 T:Ask me if Pamela is next door.

S:Is Pamela next door?

T:Where...?

S:Where is Pamela?

3 T:Ask me if Pamela can type the letter for the boss.

S:Can Pamela type the letter for the boss?

T:Why can't...?

S:Why can't Pamela type the letter for the boss?

4 T:Ask me if Pamela can read the letter.

S:Can Pamela read the letter?

T:Why can't...?

S:Why can't Pamela read the letter?

5 T:Ask me if the boss's handwriting is terrible.

S:Is the boss's handwriting terrible?

T:What...like?

S:What's the boss's handwriting like?

### homework

绿皮书 第45课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/lɪft/***lift**

What is your father doing?  
Look, he is lifting the heavy box.  
Can he lift the box?

*/keɪk/***cake n.**

v. eat; make  
结构: be+doing; be going to do; can  
easy: a piece of cake

*/'bɪskɪt/***biscuit**

make biscuits  
Can you make some biscuits for me?

**Practices****put on your coat**

- 1 Can you put on your coat?
- 2 Yes, I can.
- 3 What can you do?
- 4 I can put on my coat.

**wait for the bus**

- 1 Can Penny wait for the bus?
- 2 Yes, she can.
- 3 What can she do?
- 4 She can wait for the bus.

**listen to the stereo**

- 1 Can you and Tom listen to the stereo?
- 2 Yes, we can.
- 3 What can you and Tom do?
- 4 We can listen to the stereo.

**wash the dishes**

- 1 Can Penny and Jane wash the dishes?
- 2 Yes, they can.
- 3 What can Penny and Jane do?
- 4 They can wash the dishes.

**take these flowers to her**

- 1 Can George take these flowers to her?
- 2 Yes, he can.
- 3 What can George do?
- 4 He can take these flowers to her.

**drink its milk**

- 1 Can the cat drink its milk?
- 2 Yes, it can.
- 3 What can the cat do?
- 4 It can drink its milk.

**paint this bookcase**

- 1 Can I paint this bookcase?
- 2 Yes, you can.
- 3 What can I do?
- 4 You can paint this bookcase.

**see that aeroplane**

- 1 Can you see that aeroplane?
- 2 Yes, I can.
- 3 What can you see?
- 4 I can see that aeroplane.

**homework**

绿皮书 第46课的写作练习

cake 造句\*20

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

一般现在时

含义：

客观事实 / 存在状态 L51-54 习惯动作 L55-58

**一般现在时：肯定句**

I want this job.  
I love Beijing.  
I like tea.  
I do like tea.

**一般现在时：一般疑问句**

do 提句首  
Do you want this job?  
Yes, I do.  
No, I don't.

**一般现在时：否定句**

do+not=don't  
I do not want this job.  
I don't like tea.  
I don't love you.

Do you like tea?  
Yes, I do.  
No, I don't.  
  
Do you love him?  
Yes, I do.  
No, I don't.

**一般现在时：特殊疑问句**

特殊疑问句 = 特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句  
(去掉答案)  
I want this job.  
Do you want this job?  
What do you want?

**Words***/laɪk/***like**

I like coffee.  
Do you like coffee?  
Why don't...  
Why don't you like coffee?  
I don't like coffee.  
What do you like?

*/wɒnt/***want**

I want tea.  
Do you want tea?  
Why don't...  
Why don't you want coffee?  
I don't want tea.  
What do you want?

**homework**

绿皮书 第47课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

/f'reʃ/ /eɡ/

### **fresh adj. egg n.**

Can you take me a fresh egg?  
What is she going to do?  
She is going to send Leo some fresh eggs.

/'bʌtə/

### **butter**

Can you give me some butter, please?  
What are you going to do?  
I am going to eat some butter.

/p'reə/ /'hʌni/

### **pure adj. honey n.**

There is some pure honey in the kitchen.  
Is there any pure honey in the house?

/raɪp/ /bə'nænə/

### **ripe adj. banana n.**

I want some ripe bananas.  
Can I eat a banana?

/dʒæm/

### **jam**

Is this jam sweet?  
Do you like jam?

/swi:t/ /'ɔrindʒ/

### **sweet adj. orange n.**

I don't like sweet orange.  
What is she doing?  
She is eating that sweet orange.

/skɒtʃ/ /'wɪskɪ/

### **Scotch whisky**

Do you like Scotch whisky?  
What is he going to do?  
He is going to drink the Scotch whisky.  
Can you drink the Scotch whisky?

/tʃɔ:s/ /æpl/

### **choice adj. apple n.**

Do you want a choice apple?  
What is she doing?  
She is washing the choice apple.  
What is she going to do?  
She is going to eat it.

/wain/

### **wine**

Do you like wine?  
No, I don't.  
What are they going to do?  
They are going to drink some wine.

/bi:e/

### **beer**

Do you like beer?  
Yes, I do.  
What is he doing?  
He is drinking beer.

/'blækbɔ:d/

### **blackboard**

What is he doing?  
He is writing on the blackboard.  
Can you write it on the blackboard?  
Where can I write it?

## eggs

- 1 Do you like eggs?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like eggs, but I don't want one.

## butter

- 1 Do you like butter?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like butter, but I don't want any.

## honey

- 1 Do you like honey?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like honey, but I don't want any.

## bananas

- 1 Do you like bananas?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like bananas, but I don't want one.

## jam

- 1 Do you like jam?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like jam, but I don't want any.

## oranges

- 1 Do you like oranges?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like oranges, but I don't want one.

## ice cream

- 1 Do you like ice cream?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like ice cream, but I don't want one.

## whisky

- 1 Do you like whisky?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like whisky, but I don't want any.

## apples

- 1 Do you like apples?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like apples, but I don't want one.

## wine

- 1 Do you like wine?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like wine, but I don't want any.

## biscuits

- 1 Do you like biscuits?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like biscuits, but I don't want one.

## beer

- 1 Do you like beer?
- 2 Yes, I do. I like beer, but I don't want any.

## homework

绿皮书 第48课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'butʃə/***butcher n.**

at the butcher's

Where are you?

I'm at the butcher's.

*/mi:t/***meat n.**

cook; wash

Can you wash these meat, please?

I am going to cook some meat for you.

*/bi:f/***beef**

like; want

Do you like beef?

I like beef. But I don't want any beef now.

*/læm/***lamb**

eat;

I don't drink sheep milk.

*/pɔ:k/***pork**

cook; eat; like; want

Can you cook pork?

Do you want any pork?

*/'hʌzbənd/***husband**

This is my husband.

He is going to cook some lamb.

*/steɪk/***steak**

How do you like your steak?

rare; medium; well-done

*/mɪns/***mince**

Can you give me some mince, please?

*/'tʃɪkɪn/***chicken**

I am going to cook some chicken.

Do you want some?

*/tel/***tell**

You can tell me.

Can you tell me?

I am going to tell you.

*/tru:θ/***truth**

tell me the truth

**homework**

单词造句\*5

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

**Grammar****一般现在时**

含义：

客观事实 / 存在状态 L51-54 习惯动作 L55-58

**一般现在时：肯定句**

I want this job.

I love Beijing.

I like tea.

He wants this job, too.

**does 表强调**

He does want this job.

He loves Beijing, too. She likes tea, too.

They want some money.

## v.s 第三人称单数

1 v.+s

2 likes; wants

3 He likes coffee.

1 辅音字母+y结尾,变y为i+es

2 cry-cries; fry-fries

3 The baby cries every night.

1 s x ch sh o 结尾的v.加es

2 watches; goes; washes; does

3 He washes dishes every day.

1 元音字母+y结尾,直接加s

2 buy-buys; say-says/sez/

3 He buys a new phone every year.

### 一般现在时：否定句

He wants this job.

He doesn't want this job.

does+not

1 She likes tea.

2 She doesn't like tea.

does+not

1 She washes the dishes every day.

2 She doesn't wash the dishes every day.

does+not

1 The baby cries every night.

2 The baby doesn't cry every night.

### 一般现在时：一般疑问句

He wants this job.

Does he want this job?

does提句首+v.

1 She washes the dishes every day.

2 Does she wash the dishes every day?

does提句首+v.

1 The baby cries every night.

2 Does the baby cry every night?

does提句首+v.

1 He buys a new phone every year.

2 Does he buy a new phone every year?

## Comprehension

1 T:Where is Mrs Bird?  
S:She's at the butcher's.

2 T:Does Mrs. Bird want any meat today?  
S:Yes, she does.

3 T:Does she want beef or lamb?  
S:Beef.

4 T:Is the lamb good?  
S:Yes, it is.

5 T:Who likes lamb?  
S:Mrs. Bird does.

6 T:Does Mr. Bird like steak?  
S:Yes, he does.

7 T:Does Mrs. Bird want any mince?  
S:Yes, she does.

8 T:Does Mrs. Bird want chicken?  
S>No, she doesn't.

9 T:Does Mr Bird like chicken?  
S>No, he doesn't.

10 T:Does the butcher like chicken?  
S>No, he doesn't, either.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Mrs Bird is at the butcher's.  
S:Is Mrs. Bird at the butcher's?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is Mrs. Bird?

2 T:Ask me if Mrs. Bird wants any lamb today.  
S:Does Mrs. Bird want any lamb today?  
T:What...?  
S:What does Mrs. Bird want today?

3 T:Ask me if she wants that piece of steak.  
S:Does she want that piece of steak?  
T:Which piece...?  
S:Which piece of steak does she want?

4 T:Ask me if Mr. Bird likes steak.  
S:Does Mr. Bird like steak?  
T:What...?  
S:What does Mr. Bird like?

### homework

绿皮书 第49课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/tə'ma:təʊ/***tomato** n.

- 1 Does Penny like tomatoes?
- 2 What does Penny like/want?
- 3 Yes, she does.
- 4 She likes tomatoes, but she doesn't want any.

*/pe'teɪtəʊ/***potato**

- 1 Do you like potatoes?
- 2 Yes, I do.
- 3 I like potatoes, but I don't want any.

*/'kæbɪdʒ/***cabbage**

- 1 Does Tom like cabbage?
- 2 Yes, he does.
- 3 He likes cabbage, but he doesn't want any.

*/'letɪs/***lettuce**

- 1 Does Tom like lettuce?
- 2 Yes, he does.
- 3 He likes lettuce, but he doesn't want any.

*/pi:/***pea**

- 1 Do you like peas?
- 2 Yes, I do.
- 3 I like peas, but I don't want any.

*/bi:n/***bean**

- 1 Does Anna like beans?
- 2 Yes, she does.
- 3 She likes beans, but she doesn't want any.

*/peə/***pear**

- 1 Does Elizabeth like pears?
- 2 Yes, she does.
- 3 She likes pears, but she doesn't want any.

*/gri:p/***grape**

- 1 Do you like grapes?
- 2 Yes, I do.
- 3 I like grapes, but I don't want any.

*/pi:tʃ/***peach**

- 1 Does Betty like peaches?
- 2 Yes, she does.
- 3 She likes peaches, but she doesn't want any.

**banana**

- 1 Do you like bananas?
- 2 Yes, I do.
- 3 I like bananas, but I don't want any.

**orange**

- 1 Does Mr. Jones like oranges?
- 2 Yes, he does.
- 3 He like oranges, but he doesn't want any.

**apple**

- 1 Does George like apples?
- 2 Yes, he does.
- 3 He likes apples, but he doesn't want any.

**homework**

绿皮书 第50课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/gri:s/ /gri:k/***Greece Greek**

He comes from Greece.  
 Does he come from Greece?  
 Where does he come from?  
 He is from Greece.  
 Is he from Greece?  
 Where is he from?

*/'klaɪmɪt/***climate**

What's the climate like in Beijing?

*/'kʌntri/***country**

in my country  
 People don't eat dinner in some countries.  
 Why don't people eat dinner in these countries?

*/'plezənt/ /'weðə/***pleasant adj. weather n.**

The weather is pleasant in Auckland.

*/sprɪŋ/ /sprɪŋ/ /'ɔ:təm/ /'wɪntə/***spring summer autumn winter**

in spring/summer/autumn/winter

*/'wɪndi/***windy adj.**

What's the weather like today?  
 It's windy.

*/wɔ:m/***warm adj.**

I like warm tea in winter.  
 What's the weather like in spring?  
 It's warm in spring.

*/reɪn/ /'sʌmtaɪmz/***rain v. sometimes**

Sometimes, it rains in spring.  
 Does it rain in spring sometimes?  
 How often does it rain in spring?

*/sneə/***snow v.**

Sometimes, it snows in winter.  
 Does it snow in winter sometimes?  
 How often does it snow in winter?

*/mæ:tʃ/ /eɪprəl/ /meɪ/***March April May**

spring

*/dʒu:n/ /dʒu:lər/ /'o:gəst/***June July August**

summer

*/sep'tembə/ /ɒk'təʊbə/ /nəʊ'veembə/***September October November**

autumn

*/di'sembə/ /'dʒænjuəri/ /'febrʊəri/***December January February**

winter

**homework**

单词造句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

- 1 T: Does Dimitri come from Germany?  
S: No, he doesn't.
- 2 T: Where does Dimitri come from?  
S: Greece.
- 3 T: What is the climate like in Greece?  
S: It's very pleasant.
- 4 T: What's the weather like in spring?  
S: It's often windy in March and warm in April and May.
- 5 T: What's it like in summer?  
S: Hot.
- 6 T: When does the sun shine every day?  
S: In June, July and August.
- 7 T: What's the weather like in September?  
S: It's always warm and it rains sometimes.
- 8 T: Is it often cold in November?  
S: Yes, it is.
- 9 T: Is it cold in Greece in winter?  
S: Yes, it is.
- 10 T: Does it ever snow in Greece?  
S: Yes, it does.

## Asking questions

- 1 T: Ask me if Dimitri comes from Greece.  
S: Does Dimitri come from Greece?  
T: Where...?  
S: Where does Dimitri come from?
- 2 T: Ask me if it is often windy in March.  
S: Is it often windy in March?  
T: When...?  
S: When is it often windy?
- 3 T: Ask me if it's hot in summer.  
S: Is it hot in summer?  
T: What...like?  
S: What's it like in summer?
- 4 T: Ask me if it rains in November sometimes.  
S: Does it rain in November sometimes?  
T: When...?  
S: When does it rain?
- 5 T: Ask me if it snows in December.  
S: Does it snow in December?  
T: When...?  
S: When does it snow?

### homework

绿皮书 第51课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**the U.S.**

- 1 Does he come from the U.S.?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from the U.S.
- 3 He comes from Brazil.

*/brazil/***Brazil**

- 1 Do you come from Brazil?
- 2 No, I don't come from Brazil.
- 3 I come from the U.S.

*/holland/***Holland**

- 1 Does she come from England?
- 2 No, she doesn't come from England.
- 3 She comes from Holland.

**England**

- 1 Do you both come from Holland?
- 2 No, we don't come from Holland.
- 3 We come from England.

*/france/***France**

- 1 Do they come from Germany?
- 2 No, they don't come from Germany.
- 3 They come from France.

*/dʒə:məni/***Germany**

- 1 Do I come from France?
- 2 No, you don't come from France.
- 3 You come from Germany.

*/'itəli/***Italy**

- 1 Does he come from Italy?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from Italy.
- 3 He comes from Greece.

*/'nɔ:weɪ/***Norway**

- 1 Does he come from Norway?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from Norway.
- 3 He comes from Italy.

*/'rʌʃə/***Russia**

- 1 Does he come from Russia?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from Russia.
- 3 He comes from Norway.

*/speɪn/***Spain**

- 1 Does he come from Spain?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from Spain.
- 3 He comes from Russia.

*/'swi:dən/***Sweden**

- 1 Does he come from Sweden?
- 2 No, he doesn't come from Sweden.
- 3 He comes from Spain.

**homework**

绿皮书 第52课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/maɪld/ /'ɔ:lweɪz/***mild always**

This is a photo of Auckland.  
What's the climate like in Auckland?  
It's always mild.

*/nɔ:θ/ /i:st/ /west/ /saʊθ/***north east west south**

in the north

*/wet/***wet**

The dog is wet.  
Why is the dog wet?  
It swims in that river every day.  
Does it swim in that river every day?  
How often does it swim in that river?

*/'si:zn/***season**

spring/summer/autumn/winter

*/bɛst/***best**

He is the best in NBA history.  
You are my best friend.

*/naɪt/***night**

at night

The nights are short in summer.

*/raɪz/ /'rɪ:sli/***rise early**

The sun rises early in summer.  
The sun rises late in winter.

*/set/ /leɪt/***set late**

The sun sets early in winter.  
The sun sets late in summer.

*/'ɪnt'restɪŋ/***interesting**

This book is very interesting.  
He is an interesting man.

*/'sʌbdʒekt/***subject***/kɒnvə'seɪʃən/***conversation**

have a conversation  
They are having a conversation.

**homework**

单词造句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Does Jim come from Australia?  
S: No, he doesn't.

2 T: Does he come from England?  
S: Yes, he does.

3 T: Is the weather always pleasant in England?  
S: No, it isn't.

4 T: What's the weather like in the North?  
S: It's often cold.

5 T: What's the weather like in the East?  
S: It's often windy.

6 T: What's it like in the West?  
S: It's often wet in the West.

7 T: Which seasons does Jim like best?  
S: Spring and summer.

8 T: Are the days long in spring and summer?  
S: Yes, they are.

9 T: Does the sun rise early in summer?  
S: Yes, it does.

10 T: Is the climate interesting in England?  
S: Yes, it is.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Jim comes from England.  
S: Does Jim come from England?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where does Jim come from?

2 T: Ask me if the climate is mild in England.  
S: Is the climate mild in England?  
T: What ...like?  
S: What's the climate like in England?

3 T: Ask me if it's often wet in the West.  
S: Is it often wet in the West?  
T: What ...like?  
S: What's it like in the West?

4 T: Ask me if the sun rises early in summer.  
S: Does the sun rise early in summer?  
T: When ...?  
S: When does the sun rise in summer?

5 T: Ask me if the sun sets early in winter.  
S: Does the sun set early in winter?  
T: When ...?  
S: When does the sun set in winter?

### homework

绿皮书 53课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

/'ɒstrɪəlɪə/ /'ɒstrɪəliən/

## Australia Australian

- 1 Where do you come from?
- 2 Are you Australian?
- 3 Yes, I come from Australia.

/'ɒstriə/ /'ɒstriən/

## Austria Austrian

- 1 Where does he come from?
- 2 Is he Austrian?
- 3 Yes, he comes from Austria.

/'kænədəl/ /kə'nædiən/

## Canada Canadian

- 1 Where does he come from?
- 2 Is he Canadian?
- 3 Yes, he comes from Canada.

/'fɪnlənd/ /'fɪniʃ/

## Finland Finnish

- 1 Where do I come from?
- 2 Am I Finnish?
- 3 Yes, you come from Finland.

/'ɪndiəl/ /'ɪndiən/

## India Indian

- 1 Where does she come from?
- 2 Is she Indian?
- 3 Yes, she comes from India.

/nai'dʒerɪəl/ /nai'dʒerien/

## Nigeria Nigerian

- 1 Where does she come from?
- 2 Is she Nigerian?
- 3 Yes, she comes from Nigeria.

/'tɛ:kɪl/ /'tɛ:kɪʃ/

## Turkey Turkish

- 1 Where does she come from?
- 2 Is she Turkish?
- 3 Yes, she comes from Turkey.

/kə'rɪəl/

## Korea Korean

- 1 Where do you come from?
- 2 Are you Korean?
- 3 Yes, I come from Korea.

/'pɔ:lənd/ /'pɔ:lɪʃ/

## Poland Polish

- 1 Where do you come from?
- 2 Are you Polish?
- 3 Yes, I come from Poland.

/'taɪlænd/ /taɪ/

## Thailand Thai

- 1 Where do we both come from?
- 2 Are we both Thai?
- 3 Yes, you come from Thailand.

### homework

绿皮书 第54课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/lɪv/

**live**

live in + 国家城市

live at + 门牌号

She lives in Beijing.

Does she live in Beijing?

Where does she live?

/stəʊ/ /həʊm/ /'ju:ʒuəli/

**stay home usually**

stay in 国家城市

stay at 小地点

He usually stays at home with his child at night.

Does he usually stay at home at night?

How often does he stay at home at night?

/haʊs wɜ:k/

**housework n.**

house + work

do the housework

am/is/are doing

am/is/are going to do

can

do/does

/lʌntʃ/ /tə'geðə/

**lunch together**

We always have lunch together.

Do you always have lunch together?

Why do you always have lunch together?

/ə'ræɪv/

**arrive**

He arrives home late every night.

Does he arrive home late every night?

Why does he arrive home late every night?

/a:fte'nu:n/

**afternoon**

in the afternoon

They are going to do the housework in the afternoon.

/i:vniŋ/

**evening**

in the evening

Can I watch TV this evening?

**homework**

描述一下自己一天的生活 (一般现在时)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Comprehension**

1 T: Where do the Sawyers live?

S: At 87 King Street.

2 T: What does Mr. Sawyer do in the morning?

S: He goes to work.

3 T: What do the children do in the morning?

S: They go to School.

4 T: Who takes the children to school every day?

S: Mr. Sawyer does.

5 T: What does Mrs. Sawyer do every day?

S: She stays at home.

6 T: When does she eat her lunch?

S: At noon.

7 T: What does she usually do in the afternoon?

S: She usually sees her friends.

8 T: When do the children come home from school?

S: In the evening.

9 T:When do the children do their homework?  
S:They always do it at night.

10 T:What does Mr. Sawyer usually do at night?  
S:He usually reads his newspaper.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the Sawyers live at 87 King Street.

S:Do the Sawyers live at 87 King Street?

T:Where...?

S:Where do the Sawyers live?

2 T:Ask me if Mr. Sawyer goes to work in the morning.

S:Does Mr. Sawyer go to work in the morning?

T:When...?

S:When does Mr Sawyer go to work?

3 T:Ask me if Mrs. Sawyer eats her lunch at noon.

S:Does Mrs. Sawyer eat her lunch at noon?

T:When...?

S:When does Mrs Sawyer eat her lunch?

4 T:Ask me if Mr. Sawyer arrives home late.

S:Does Mr. Sawyer arrive home late?

T:When?

S:When does Mr. Sawyer arrive home?

5 T:Ask me if the children arrive home early.

S:Do the children arrive home early?

T:When...?

S:When do the children arrive home?

### homework

绿皮书 第55课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

文章四句型转换

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**dusts the cupboard**

- 1 What does she often do in the morning?  
 2 She often dusts the cupboard in the morning.

**makes the bed**

- 1 What does she always do in the morning?  
 2 She always makes the bed in the morning.

**shaves**

- 1 What does he always do in the morning?  
 2 He always shaves in the morning.

**listen to the stereo**

- 1 What do they sometimes do in the evening?  
 2 They sometimes listen to the stereo in the evening.

**cleans the blackboard**

- 1 What does he always do every day?  
 2 He always cleans the blackboard every day.

**go to bed**

- 1 What do they always do at night?  
 2 They always go to bed at night.

**washes the dishes**

- 1 What does she usually do every day?  
 2 She usually washes the dishes every day.

**type letters**

- 1 What do they usually do in the afternoon?  
 2 They usually type letters in the afternoon.

**drinks milk**

- 1 What does the cat sometimes do in the evening?  
 2 It usually drinks milk every day.

**watch television**

- 1 What do they sometimes do in the evening?  
 2 They sometimes watch television in the evening.

**eats her lunch**

- 1 What does she always do at noon?  
 2 She always eats her lunch at noon.

**reads his newspaper**

- 1 What does he often do in the evening?  
 2 He often reads his newspaper in the evening.

**homework**

绿皮书 第56课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ə'kɒk/*  
**o'clock**

What time is it?  
What's the time.  
It's 3 o'clock.  
Is it 3 o'clock?

*/ʃɒp/*  
**shop**

There are many shops in this street.

*/'məʊmənt/*  
**moment**

at the moment  
She is doing the housework at the moment.  
Does she do the housework every day?

**Comprehension**

1 T:What's the time?  
S:It's eight o'clock.

2 T:Do the children usually go to school by car every day?  
S:Yes, they do.

3 T:What are they doing today?  
S:They are going to school on foot.

4 T:What does Mrs. Sawyer usually do in the morning.  
S:She usually stays at home.

5 T:What is she doing this morning?  
S:She's going to the shops.

6 T:Who usually drinks tea in the living room?  
S:Mrs. Sawyer does.

7 T:Where is she drinking tea this afternoon?  
S:In the garden.

8 T:When do the children usually do their homework?  
S:In the evening.

9 T:What are they doing at the moment?  
S:They're playing in the garden.

10 T:What is Mr. Sawyer doing tonight?  
S:He's reading an interesting book.

**Asking questions**

1 T:Ask me if the children go to school by car.

S:Do the Children go to school by car?  
T:How...?  
S:How do the children go to school?

2 T:Ask me if Mrs. Sawyer is going to the shops.

S:Is Mrs. Sawyer going to the shops?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is Mrs. Sawyer going?

- 3 T:Ask me if she drinks tea at four o'clock.  
S:Does she drink tea at four o' clock?  
T:What...?  
S:What does she drink at four o'clock?
- 4 T:Ask me if they do their homework in the evening.  
S:Do they do their homework in the evening?  
T:When...?  
S:When do they do their homework?
- 5 T:Ask me if Mr. Sawyer is reading an interesting book.  
S:Is Mr. Sawyer reading an interesting book?  
T:What...?  
S:What is Mr. Sawyer reading?

### homework

绿皮书 第57课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍本课的核心知识点

**What time is it?**

- 1 It is six o'clock.
- 2 Is it six o'clock?
- 3 What time is it?
- 4 What's the time?

**What time is it?**

- 1 倒序 (to; half; a quarter)
- 2 分 to 时
- 3 a quarter to 12
- 4 10 to 12

**What time is it?**

- 1 顺序(past; half; a quarter)
- 2 分past时
- 3 half past 12
- 4 a quarter past 12
- 5 12 past 12
- 6 12:50

**Practices****do/does VS be+v.ing**

- 1 What does he usually do every day?
- 2 He usually shaves at 7 o'clock every day.
- 3 What is he doing today?
- 4 He is shaving at 8 o'clock today.

**do/does VS be+v.ing**

- 1 What do you usually do in the evening?
- 2 I usually cook a meal in the evening.
- 3 What are you doing this evening?
- 4 I am reading a book this evening.

**do/does VS be+v.ing**

- 1 What does she usually do in the morning?
- 2 She usually drinks tea in the morning.
- 3 What is she doing this morning?
- 4 She is drinking coffee this morning.

**do/does VS be+v.ing**

- 1 What do you all usually do at night?
- 2 We usually watch television at night.
- 3 What are you all doing tonight?
- 4 We are listening to the stereo tonight.

**do/does VS be+v.ing**

- 1 What do they usually do in the afternoon?
- 2 They usually play in the garden in the afternoon.
- 3 What are they doing this afternoon?
- 4 They are swimming in the river this afternoon.

**homework**

绿皮书 第58课的写作练习；随时看表说出时间；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'enveələp/***envelope n.**

I have a new envelope.

Do you have an envelope?

He has a new envelope.

Does he have an envelope?

*/'raɪtɪŋ/ /'peɪpə/***writing paper**

Don't write on that writing paper.

She is writing on that writing paper.

**shop assistant**

I know that shop assistant.

Do you know that shop assistant?

That shop assistant works hard every day.

*/saɪz/***size**

I want a large size.

Do you want a large size?

What size do you want?

*/pæd/***pad**

He wants a pad.

Does he want a pad?

What does he want?

She is going to buy some pads.

*/glu:/***glue**

There is some glue in the kitchen.

Is there any glue in the kitchen?

*/tʃɔ:k/***chalk**

Look, the little girl is eating the chalk, stop that.

Can you give me a box of chalk?

*/tʃeɪndʒ/***change**

She wants her change.

Does she want her change?

**homework**

单词造句，结合不同时态和大结构；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Comprehension**

1 T:Where is the lady?

S:She's at the stationer's.

2 T:What does the lady want?

S:Some envelopes.

3 T:What size envelopes does she want?

S:The large size.

4 T:What else does she want?

S:She wants some writing paper.

5 T:Are there any small pads in the shop?

S&gt;No, there aren't.

6 T:Does the lady want a large pad?

S:Yes, she does.

7 T:Does she want some glue too?

S:Yes, she does.

8 T:Does she want a box of chalk?

S:Yes, she does.

9 T:Does she want the small size?

S&gt;No, she doesn't.

10 T:What else does she want?

S:She wants her change.

1 T: Ask me if the lady wants any envelopes.

S: Does the lady want any envelopes?

T: What...?

S: What does the lady want?

2 T: Ask me if she wants the large size.

S: Does she want the large size?

T: What size...?

S: What size does she want?

3 T: Ask me if I have any writing paper.

S: Do you have any writing paper?

T: What...?

S: What do you have?

4 T: Ask me if she wants any glue.

S: Does she want any glue?

T: What...?

S: What does she want?

5 T: Ask me if she wants her change.

S: Does she want her change?

T: What else...?

S: What else does she want?

### homework

绿皮书第59课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 60

## Practices

### cheese

1 Do you have any butter?

2 I don't have any butter, but I have some cheese.

### potatoes

1 Do you and Penny have any beans?

2 We don't have any beans, but we have some potatoes.

### beer

1 Do Penny and Tom have any wine?

2 They don't have any wine, but they have some beer.

### jam

1 Do you have any honey?

2 I don't have any honey, but I have some jam.

### biscuits

1 Do you and Tom have any bread?

2 We don't have any bread, but we have some biscuits.

### bananas

1 Do Tom and Penny have any grapes?

2 They don't have any grapes, but they have some bananas.

**steak**

- 1 Do you have any mince?
- 2 I don't have any mince, but I have some steak.

**eggs**

- 1 Do the children have any butter?
- 2 They don't have any butter, but they have some eggs.

**cabbages**

- 1 Do you have any lettuces?
- 2 I don't have any lettuces, but I have some cabbages.

**peas**

- 1 Do you and Penny have any beans?
- 2 We don't have any beans, but we have some peas.

**homework**

绿皮书 第60课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/fi:/ /bæd/

**feel v. bad adj.**

She feels great.

She doesn't feel bad.

Does she feel great?

How does she feel?

/lək/

**look v.**

He looks ill.

Does he look ill?

How does he look?

**sound v.**

It sounds terrible.

It doesn't sound good.

**smell v.**

I smell bad.

Do I smell bad?

How do I smell?

**taste v.**

It tastes terrible.

It doesn't taste good.

/kɔ:l/

/mʌst/ /'dɒktə/

**call v. n. must doctor**

call me

give me a call

You look ill. I must call the doctor.

Do you know that doctor?

I don't have the doctor's number.

/tə'lɪfən/

**telephone n. phone**

Where is the phone?

There is a phone in the living room.

Can you clean this phone, please?

I am cleaning the phone now.

/rɪ'membər/

**remember v.**

Can you remember the doctor's phone number?

Sorry, I can't remember that.

/məʊθ/ /tʌŋ/

**mouth n. tongue n.**

Open your mouth.

Show me your tongue.

There is something in my mouth, on the tongue.

/kəʊld/

**cold n.**

They look ill.

They have a bad cold.

Do they have a cold?

/nju:z/

**news un.**

bad news

good news

I have good news for you.

Do you have any good news for me?

**homework**

单词造句\*3; 请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Where's Jimmy?  
S:He's in bed.

2 T:What's the matter with Jimmy?  
S:He feels ill.

3 T:Does he look ill?  
S:Yes, he does.

4 T:Must Mr. and Mrs. Williams call  
the doctor?  
S:Yes, they must.

5 T:Can Mrs. Williams remember the  
doctor's telephone number?  
S:Yes, she can.

6 T:Must Jimmy open his mouth?  
S:Yes, he must.

7 T:Must he show the doctor his  
tongue?  
S:Yes, he must.

8 T:What's the matter with him, then?  
S:He has a bad cold.

9 T:What must he do?  
S:He must stay in bed for a week.

10 T:Why is that good news for  
Jimmy?  
S:Because he doesn't like school.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Jimmy is in bed.  
S:Is Jimmy in bed?  
T:Where ...?  
S:Where is Jimmy?

2 T:Ask me if he feels ill.  
S:Does he feel ill?  
T:How...?  
S:How does he feel?

3 T:Ask me if he looks ill.  
S:Does he look ill?  
T:How...?  
S:How does he look?

4 T:Ask me if the doctor's telephone  
number is 09754.  
S:Is the doctor's telephone number  
09754?  
T:What ...?  
S:What is the doctor's telephone  
number?

5 T:Ask me if this is good news for  
Jimmy.  
S:Is this good news for Jimmy?  
T:Why...?  
S:Why is this good news for Jimmy?

### homework

绿皮书 第61课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/'hedeɪk/***I have a headache.**

sit up

take off these glasses

*/'æsprɪn/***aspirin**

take an aspirin

I have a headache, and I'm gonna take an aspirin.

*/'iərəeɪk/***earache**

have an earache

Does he have an headache?

No, he has an earache.

*/'tu:θeɪk/***toothache**

Does she have an headache?

No, she has a toothache.

*/dɛntɪst/***dentist**

I'm gonna see a dentist.

I have a toothache.

*/'stʌmək/ /eɪk/***stomach ache**

He has a stomach ache.

Does he have a stomach ache?

*/'medɪsɪn/***medicine**

What are you doing?

I'm taking some medicine.

I have a stomach ache.

*/'tempeɪtʃəl/***temperature**

She has a temperature.

Does she have a temperature?

*/flu:/***flu**

Does he have flu?

Yes, he does.

*/'mi:zəlz/***measles**

have measles

*/mʌmpz/***mumps**

have mumps

**headache**

- 1 What's the matter with her?
- 2 Does she have an earache?
- 3 She doesn't have an earache.
- 4 She has a headache.
- 5 What must she do?
- 6 She must take an aspirin.

**earache**

- 1 What's the matter with George?
- 2 Does he have a headache?
- 3 He doesn't have a headache.
- 4 He has an earache.
- 5 What must he do?
- 6 He must see a doctor.

**toothache**

- 1 What's the matter with him?
- 2 Does he have a stomach ache?
- 3 He doesn't have a stomach ache.
- 4 He has a toothache.
- 5 What must he do?
- 6 He must see a dentist.

**stomach ache**

- 1 What's the matter with Jane?
- 2 Does she have a toothache?
- 3 She doesn't have a toothache.
- 4 She has a stomach ache.
- 5 What must she do?
- 6 She must take some medicine.

**Practices**

### **temperature**

- 1 What's the matter with Sam?
- 2 Does he have a stomach ache?
- 3 He doesn't have a stomach ache.
- 4 He has a temperature.
- 5 What must he do?
- 6 He must go to bed.

### **flu**

- 1 What's the matter with Dave?
- 2 Does he have a headache?
- 3 He doesn't have a headache.
- 4 He has flu.
- 5 What must he do?
- 6 He must stay in bed.

### **measles**

- 1 What's the matter with Jimmy?
- 2 Does he have a headache?
- 3 He doesn't have a headache.
- 4 He has measles.
- 5 What must we do?
- 6 We must call the doctor.

### **mumps**

- 1 What's the matter with Susan?
- 2 Does she have an earache?
- 3 She doesn't have an earache.
- 4 She has mumps.
- 5 What must we do?
- 6 We must call the doctor.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第62课的写作练习

单词造句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 情态动词 must (必须)

**can**

I can help you.

I can't help you.

Can you help me?

What can you do?

**must 肯定句**

主+must+do

I have a very bad headache.

I must call the doctor.

I'm so hungry.

I must eat some food.

I'm so thirsty.

I must drink some water.

He's so tired.

He must go to bed now.

**must 否定句**

主+must+not+do mustn't

You mustn't go.

注意:表[禁止], 而非[不必], 轻易别用

Don't go.

You mustn't smoke here.

Don't+v.

You mustn't eat rich food.

Don't+v.

You mustn't stay here.

Don't+v.

**must 一般疑问句**

Must+主+do...?

Must I do the housework today?

Must he go?

Yes, he must.

No, he mustn't.

Must I do the housework?

Yes, you must.

Must I take these medicine?

Yes, you must.

**must 特殊疑问句**

What+must+主+do?

What must she do?

She must clean her bedroom.

What must I do?

It's raining outside.

You must stay in the house.

What must he do?

He must go.

**better**

good better L107  
I am/feel better.

**certainly**

Excuse me

**get up v. yet**

wake up  
I always wake up at 6, but I remain in bed, and get up at 8:30.

**rich adj. food un.**

rich food  
I don't like rich food.  
My friend likes rich food.  
rich poor  
He is rich.

**remain v.**

He must remain in bed.  
He mustn't get up yet.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Comprehension**

1 T:How is Jimmy today?  
S:He's better.

2 T:Can the doctor see him?  
S:Yes, he can.

3 T:Does Jimmy look very well today?  
S:Yes, he does.

4 T:Can Jimmy get up now?  
S>No, he mustn't get up yet.

5 T:How long must he stay in bed?  
S:He must stay in bed for another two days.

6 T:Can Jimmy go to school now?  
S>No, he mustn't go to school yet.

7 T:Can he get up?  
S:Yes, he can get up for about two hours each day.

8 T:What must Mrs. Williams do?  
S:She must keep the room warm.

9 T:Where's Mr. Williams this evening?  
S:He's in bed.

10 T:Why is Mr. Williams in bed?  
S:He has a bad cold.

1 T:Ask me if Jimmy is better today.

S:Is Jimmy better today?

T:How ...?

S:How is Jimmy today?

2 T:Ask me if Jimmy's upstairs.

S:Is Jimmy upstairs?

T:Where ...?

S:Where is Jimmy?

3 T:Ask me if Jimmy must stay in bed.

S:Must Jimmy stay in bed?

T:Why ...?

S:Why must Jimmy stay in bed?

4 T:Ask me if Jimmy has a temperature.

S:Does Jimmy have a temperature?

T:Who...?

S:Who has a temperature?

5 T:Ask me if Mrs. Williams must keep the room warm.

S:Must Mrs. Williams keep the room warm?

T:Why ...?

S:Why must Mrs. Williams Keep the room warm?

## homework

绿皮书 第63课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 64

## Words

/pleɪ/

### **play v.**

play with sb.

Don't play with him.

Can I play with him?

He is gonna play with his parents this weekend.

/mætʃ/

### **match n.**

play with matches

I can't find the matches.

Can you find the matches?

/tɔ:k/

### **talk v.**

talk to sb.

Don't talk to me now.

I'm gonna talk to him.

/la:bəri/

### **library n.**

go to the library

He goes to the library on Sundays.

Does he go to the library on Sundays?

When does he go to the library?

Where does he go on Sundays?

/draɪv/

### **drive v.**

drive my car

Call me later, please. I'm driving.

You can drive my car to school.

/səʊ/

### **so adv. quickly adv.**

You are driving so quickly.

Please slow down.

Don't drive so quickly.

## **lean out of**

Look, they are leaning out of the window.  
Don't lean out of the window.

/breɪk/

## **break v. n.**

break the window  
break my arm  
Are you going to break that window?

/noɪz/

## **noise n.**

make a noise  
Don't make a noise.

# **Practices**

### **take any aspirins**

1 Don't take any aspirins!  
2 You mustn't take any aspirins.

### **take this medicine**

1 Don't take this medicine!  
2 You mustn't take this medicine.

### **call the doctor**

1 Don't call the doctor!  
2 You mustn't call the doctor.

### **play with matches**

1 Don't play with matches!  
2 You mustn't play with matches.

### **talk in the library**

1 Don't talk in the library!  
2 You mustn't talk in the library.

### **make a noise**

1 Don't make a noise!  
2 You mustn't make a noise.

### **drive so quickly**

1 Don't drive so quickly!  
2 You mustn't drive so quickly.

### **lean out of**

1 Don't lean out of the window!  
2 You mustn't lean out of the window.

### **break that vase**

1 Don't break that vase!  
2 You mustn't break that vase.

## **homework**

绿皮书 第64课的写作练习

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/dæd/ /mʌm/***Dad Mum**

My dad is driving now.  
My mum is going to call my dad.

*/ki:/***key n.**

Can you find the key?  
I am cleaning the key now. It's very dirty.  
She is going to give me the key.  
He takes the key to school every day.  
You must take the key with you.

*/ki:/***key n.**

Can you find the key?  
I am cleaning the key now. It's very dirty.  
She is going to give me the key.  
He takes the key to school every day.  
You must take the key with you.

*/'beɪbi/***baby n.**

This is her baby.  
Is this her baby?  
Whose baby is this?  
The baby looks ill. We must call the doctor.

*/hɪə/***hear v.**

Can you hear me?  
Do you hear that?  
I can't hear it.  
Why can't you hear it?

*/ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ /jɔ: 'self/***enjoy yourself**

We're gonna have a party tonight.  
enjoy yourselves

*/ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ /aʊə 'selvz/***enjoy ourselves**

We're gonna have a party tonight.  
We're gonna enjoy ourselves.

**Comprehension**

1 T: Is Jill going to stay at home this evening?  
S: No, she isn't.

2 T: What is Jill going to do?  
S: She's going to meet some friends.

3 T: When must she come home?  
S: She must be home at half past ten.

4 T: Can she get home at half past ten?  
S: No, she can't.

5 T: What does she want to do?  
S: She wants to have the key to the front door.

6 T: Does her father want to give her the key?  
S: No, he doesn't.

7 T: How old is Jill?  
S: She's eighteen years old.

8 T: Does Jill always come home early?  
S: Yes, she does.

9 T: Does Jill's father give her the key?  
S: Yes, he does.

10 T: Do she and her friends always enjoy themselves?  
S: Yes, they do.

1 T:Ask me if Jill is going to meet some friends this evening.

S:Is Jill going to meet any friends this evening?

T:Who ...?

S:Who is Jill going to meet this evening?

2 T:Ask me if she must be home at half past ten.

S:Must she be home at half past ten?

T:What time ...?

S:What time must she be home?

3 T:Ask me if she is eighteen.

S:Is she eighteen?

T:How old ...?

S:How old is she?

4 T:Ask me if her father gives her a key.

S:Does her father give her a key?

T:What ...?

S:What does her father give her?

5 T:Ask me if they always enjoy themselves.

S:Do they always enjoy themselves?

T:How ...?

S:How do they always enjoy themselves?

### homework

绿皮书 第65课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 66

## Practices

---

### 人称

|      |      |       |            |
|------|------|-------|------------|
| I    | me   | my    | myself     |
| he   | him  | his   | himself    |
| she  | her  | her   | herself    |
| it   | it   | its   | itself     |
| you  | you  | your  | yourself   |
| you  | you  | your  | yourselves |
| they | them | their | themselves |

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must you come home?
- 2 I must come home at one o'clock.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must she go to the library?
- 2 She must go to the library at a quarter past one.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must you and Tom see the dentist?
- 2 We must see the dentist at a quarter to four.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must you type this letter?
- 2 I must type this letter at two o'clock.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must Sam and Penny see the boss?
- 2 They must see the boss at half past one.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must George take his medicine?
- 2 He must take his medicine at a quarter past three.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must Sophie drive to London?
- 2 She must drive to London at half past two.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must I catch the bus?
- 2 You must catch the bus at half past three.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must you arrive there?
- 2 I must arrive there at three o'clock.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must they come home?
- 2 They must come home at a quarter past two.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must you meet Tom?
- 2 I must meet Tom at a quarter to two.

### **when 特殊疑问句**

- 1 When must he telephone you?
- 2 He must telephone me at a quarter to three.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第66课的写作练习

整理与人称相关的词汇 (红皮书)

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 一般过去时

含义：

过去的状态 L67-70 过去发生的动作 L71-78

**一般过去时：肯定句**

am/is — was

are — were

He is a teacher.

He was a teacher.

am/is — was

are — were

Was 15.99

Now 7.99

He was ill.

He is better now.

We were at home in the morning.

Now we are at school.

**一般过去时：否定句**

are/is/are + not

was/were + not

wasn't weren't

They were not at school.

She was not thirsty.

This wasn't us.

**一般过去时：一般疑问句**

am/is/are 提句首

was/were 提句首

She was hungry.

Was she hungry?

He was at work.

Was he at work?

We were happy.

Were you happy?

**一般过去时：特殊疑问句**

特殊疑问句=特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

He was at work in the morning.

Was he at work in the morning?

When was he at work?

特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

She was at school.

Was she at school in the afternoon?

Where was she in the afternoon?

特殊疑问词+一般疑问句

They were friends.

Were they friends?

Why were they friends?

They are from different places.

/'gri:n'grəʊsə/

## greengrocer

green + grocer

grocery = stores = shops

/'æbsənt/

## absent

be absent from

Tim is absent from school again.

Tim was absent from school yesterday.

/spend/

spend st. sw.

The students spend five days in the school every week.

I spend 2 hours in the gym every day.

/'kʌntri/

spend st. sw.

We're gonna spend five days in the country.

Are you gonna spend five days in the country?

why/who/where

country music

/'lʌki/

## lucky

lucky number

What's your lucky number?

He was very lucky.

/'mʌndei/ /'tʃu:zdei/

## Monday Tuesday

/'wenzdei/ /'θɜ:zdei/

## Wednesday Thursday

/'fraidei/

/'sætədei/ /'sændeɪ/ /'wi:kend/

## Saturday Sunday weekend

### homework

单词造句\*3

尝试利用索引/目录在红皮书中查找到 was/were

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Story + Grammar

### 否定疑问句–难道

Isn't he Leo?

Isn't there any tea in the kitchen?

Can't you see me?

Isn't he sleeping?

### 否定疑问句–难道

Aren't you going to help him?

Don't you like tea?

Doesn't he look ill?

## Comprehension

1 T:Was Mrs. Johnson at the butcher's?  
S:No, she wasn't.

2 T:Was she at the greengrocer's?  
S:Yes, she was.

3 T:Who was at the butcher's?  
S:Mrs. Williams was.

4 T:Who was at the greengrocer's?  
S:Mrs. Johnson was.

5 T:How is Jimmy today?  
S:He's very well.

6 T:Was Jimmy at school last week?  
S:No, he wasn't.

7 T:When was he absent from school?  
S:He was absent on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday.

8 T:Where are the Johnsons going to spend the weekend?  
S:At Mrs. Johnson's mother's, in the country.

9 T:Which days are they going to spend in the country?  
S:Friday, Saturday and Sunday.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Mrs. Johnson was at the butcher's.

S:Was Mrs. Johnson at the butcher's?

T:Where ...?

S:Where was Mrs. Johnson?

2 T:Ask me if Jimmy is well today.

S:Is Jimmy well today?

T:How ...?

S:How is Jimmy today?

3 T:Ask me if he was absent from school last week.

S:Was he absent from school last week?

T:When ...?

S:When was he absent from school?

4 T:Ask me if they are all keeping well.

S:Are they all keeping well?

T:How ...?

S:How are they all keeping?

5 T:Ask me if they're going to stay at her mother's.

S:Are they going to stay at her mother's?

T:Where ...?

S:Where are they going to stay?

### homework

绿皮书 第67课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/tʃə:tʃ/***church**

at church

He is always at church on Sundays.

Is he always at church on Sundays?

He was at church last Sunday.

*/'deəri/***dairy n.**

at the dairy

*/'beɪkə/***baker n.**

at the baker's

*/'g्रeəsə/***grocer n.**

at the grocer's

Were you at the grocer's?

*/tʃə:tʃ/***at church**

When were you at church?

I was at church on Sunday.

Were you at church on Sunday?

**at the hairdresser's**

1 When was Tom at the hairdresser's?

2 He was at the hairdresser's on Thursday.

3 Was he at the hairdresser's on Thursday?

**at the butcher's**

1 When was Mrs. Jones at the butcher's?

2 She was at the butcher's on Wednesday.

3 Was she at the butcher's on Wednesday?

**at home**

1 When were you at home?

2 I was at home on Sunday.

3 Were you at home on Sunday?

**at the office**

1 When was Miss Grey at the office?

2 She was at the office on Tuesday.

3 Was she at the office on Tuesday?

**at the baker's**

1 When was Mary at the baker's?

2 She was at the baker's on Friday.

3 Was she at the baker's on Friday?

**at the dairy**

1 When were you at the dairy?

2 I was at the dairy on Saturday.

3 Were you at the dairy on Saturday?

**at the greengrocer's**

1 When was Mrs. Jones at the greengrocer's?

2 She was at the greengrocer's on Tuesday.

3 Was she at the greengrocer's on Tuesday?

**at the grocer's**

1 When was Mrs. Williams at the grocer's?

2 She was at the grocer's on Monday.

3 Was she at the grocer's on Monday?

## at school

- 1 When were you at school?
- 2 I was at school on Monday.
- 3 Were you at school on Monday?

## homework

绿皮书 第68课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

### Questions

### Homework

### Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**there be**

There is/are + sth. + sw.

There was/were + sth. + sw.

Where is the pen?

There was a pen on the table.

It's not here.

**Words***/jɪə/***year**

next year

I'm gonna buy a new car next year.

last year

I was in Auckland last year.

*/reɪs/***race n.**

car race

We're gonna watch a car race tonight.

We must leave now. The car race is at 8.

*/taʊn/***town n.**

This is a small town.

She lives in a small town.

Does she live in a small town?

Where does she live?

Can you find that town on the map?

Can you remember the name of the town?

*/kraʊd/***crowd n.**

a large crowd of people

You can see a large crowd of people on the street.

*/stænd/***stand**

She is standing.

Is she standing?

Why is she standing? We have a lot of chairs.

*/ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/***exciting adj.**

This is exciting.

*/bɪ'hænd/***behind prep.**

Can you see the boy?

He is standing behind the tree.

Why is he standing behind the tree?

*/'fɪnɪʃ/**/'wɪnə/**/dʒʌst/***finish n. v. winner n. just**

They are running.

Tim is the winner.

This is an exciting finish.

Two people are just behind him.

*/weɪ/***way**

on the way home

**homework**

单词造句\*3

红皮书查找 there + was

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T: Where is there a car race every year?  
S: There's one near our town every year.

2 T: When was there a very big car race?  
S: In 1995.

3 T: How many people were there?  
S: There were hundreds of people there.

4 T: Were our friends, Julie and Jack, at the race?  
S: Yes, they were.

5 T: How many cars were there in the race?  
S: There were twenty cars in the race.

6 T: What cars were there in the race?  
S: There were English cars, French cars, German cars, Italian cars.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if the car race is every year.  
S: Is the car race every year?  
T: When ...?  
S: When is the car race?

2 T: Ask me if there was a very big race in 1995.  
S: Was there a very big race in 1995?  
T: When ...?  
S: When was there a very big race?

3 T: Ask me if my wife and I were at the race.  
S: Were your wife and you at the race?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where were your wife and you?

4 T: Ask me if there were twenty cars in the race.  
S: Were there twenty cars in the race?  
T: How many ...?  
S: How many cars were there in the race?

5 T: Ask me if the winner was Billy Stewart.  
S: Was the winner Billy Stewart?  
T: Who ...?  
S: Who was the winner?

### homework

绿皮书 第69课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

/'steɪʃənə/

**stationer**

at the stationer's

Were you at the stationer's?

Where were you?

/'dɛnmɑ:k/

**Denmark**

She comes from Denmark.

Does she come from Denmark?

Where does she come from?

## Practices

### at the stationer's

- 1 When were Sam and Penny at the stationer's?
- 2 They were at the stationer's on Monday.

### at the office

- 1 When were you and Susan at the office?
- 2 We were at the office on March 23rd.

### in India

- 1 When was I in India?
- 2 You were in India in 1985.

### in Australia

- 1 When were you and Penny in Australia?
- 2 We were in Australia in July.

### at the dairy

- 1 When was I at the dairy?
- 2 You were at the dairy on Saturday.

### in Austria

- 1 When were George and I in Austria?
- 2 You were in Austria in August.

### at home

- 1 When were they all at home?
- 2 They were at home on May. 25th.

### at the hairdresser's

- 1 When was I at the hairdresser's?
- 2 You were at the hairdresser's on Wednesday.

### in Finland

- 1 When were you and David in Finland?
- 2 We were in Finland in December.

### homework

绿皮书 第70课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 一般过去时

含义：

过去的状态 L67-70 过去发生的动作 L71-78

**一般过去时：肯定句**

Do you love me?

I love you.

I loved you.

v. — v.ed 过去式 (规则 VS 不规则)

+ed

1 He looked nice yesterday.

2 I talked to him yesterday.

3 We enjoyed ourselves yesterday.

## 结尾e不发音+ed

1 live — lived

2 I live in Beijing now.

3 I lived in Auckland last year.

## 辅音字母+y结尾，变y为ied

1 empty — emptied

2 She emptied the basket yesterday.

## 元音字母+y结尾，+ed

1 play — played

2 We played with our parents  
yesterday.

## 双写+ed

1 stop — stopped

**一般过去时：否定句**

do/does — did

did+not = didn't

I talked to him yesterday.

I did not talk to him yesterday.

did + not

1 She emptied the basket yesterday.

2 She did not empty the basket  
yesterday.

did + not

1 We played with our parents  
yesterday.2 We didn't play with our parents  
yesterday.

did + not

1 I lived in Auckland last year.

2 I didn't live in Beijing last year.

## 一般过去时：一般疑问句

do/does 提句首 v.变原形

did 提句首 v.变原形

1 I loved you.

2 Did you love me?

did 提句首 v.变原形

1 I lived in Auckland last year.

2 Did you live in Auckland last year?

did 提句首 v.变原形

1 She emptied the basket yesterday.

2 Did she empty the basket  
yesterday?

did 提句首 v.变原形

1 We played with our parents  
yesterday.

2 Did you play with your parents  
yesterday?

## 一般过去时：特殊疑问句

What + did + 主 + do?

1 What did he do yesterday afternoon?

2 He called me.

What + did + 主 + do?

1 What did you do yesterday morning?

2 I cleaned the kitchen.

What + did + 主 + do?

1 What did she do last night?

2 She watched TV last night.

## Words

/'o:fəl/

### awful adj.

It smells awful.

He is awful.

/'telɪfən/

### telephone v. n. phone

call me

I must telephone the doctor.

They're gonna buy a new phone.

/taɪm/

### time

how many times

He telephoned me four times yesterday.

Did he telephone you four times yesterday?

How many times did he telephone you?

/'a:nseɪl/

### answer v.

Are you going to answer that phone?

Can you answer the phone?

/la:st/

### last

last night

last week

last year

He telephoned me four times last night.

Did he telephone you last night?

When did he telephone you?

/seɪl/ /sed/ /ə'gen/

### say-said v. again

What did you say?

Can you say it again? Pardon?

## homework

单词造句\*3：红皮书查找 did；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T: Is Ron Marston nice?  
S: No, he isn't.

2 T: What's he like?  
S: He's awful.

3 T: What did Ron Marston do yesterday?  
S: He telephoned Pauline four times.

4 T: How many times did he telephone the day before yesterday?  
S: Three times.

5 T: When did Ron Marston telephone the office?  
S: Yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon.

6 T: Who answered the telephone?  
S: Pauline's boss did.

7 T: What time did Pauline arrive home yesterday evening?  
S: At six o'clock.

8 T: Did she answer the phone?  
S: No, she didn't.

9 T: What time did Ron Marston telephone last night?  
S: At nine o'clock.

10 T: Did he telephone Pauline again?  
S: No, he didn't.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Ron telephoned four times yesterday.  
S: Did Ron telephone four times yesterday?  
T: How many times...?  
S: How many times did Ron telephone yesterday?

2 T: Ask me if the boss answered the phone.  
S: Did the boss answer the phone?  
T: Who...?  
S: Who answered the phone?

3 T: Ask me if I arrived home at six.  
S: Did you arrive home at six?  
T: When...?  
S: When did you arrive home?

4 T: Ask me if I answered the phone.  
S: Did you answer the phone?  
T: Why didn't...?  
S: Why didn't you answer the phone?

5 T: Ask me if he telephoned again.  
S: Did he telephone again?  
T: Why didn't...?  
S: Why didn't he telephone again?

### homework

绿皮书 第71课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**aired the room**

- 1 What did you do yesterday?
- 2 I aired the room yesterday.
- 3 Did you air the room yesterday?
- 4 When did you air the room?

**listened to the stereo**

- 1 What did she do last night?
- 2 She listened to the stereo last night.
- 3 Did she listen to the stereo last night?
- 4 When did she listen to the stereo?

**shaved**

- 1 What did he do this morning?
- 2 He shaved this morning.
- 3 Did he shave this morning?
- 4 When did he shave?

**telephoned**

- 1 What did she do the night before last?
- 2 She telephoned her husband the night before last.
- 3 Did she telephone her husband the night before last?
- 4 When did she telephone her husband?

**called the doctor**

- 1 What did you do last night?
- 2 I called the doctor last night.
- 3 Did you call the doctor last night?
- 4 When did you call the doctor?

**emptied the basket**

- 1 What did she do the day before yesterday?
- 2 She emptied the basket the day before yesterday.
- 3 Did she empty the basket the day before yesterday?
- 4 When did she empty the basket?

**boiled an egg**

- 1 What did I do yesterday morning?
- 2 You boiled an egg yesterday morning.
- 3 Did I boil an egg yesterday morning?
- 4 When did I boil an egg?

**cleaned our shoes**

- 1 What did you and Tom do yesterday?
- 2 We cleaned our shoes yesterday.
- 3 Did you clean your shoes yesterday?
- 4 When did you clean your shoes?

**played**

- 1 What did the children do yesterday afternoon?
- 2 They played in the garden yesterday afternoon.
- 3 Did they play in the garden yesterday afternoon?
- 4 When did they play in the garden?

**stayed in bed**

- 1 What did he do today?
- 2 He stayed in bed today.
- 3 Did he stay in bed today?
- 4 When did he stay in bed?

**homework**

绿皮书 第72课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/gəʊ/ /wɛnt/***go — went v.**

They go to school everyday.  
 I went to school yesterday too.  
 Did you go to school yesterday?  
 When did you go to school?

*/wi:k/***week**

weekday weekend  
 You called me last week.  
 Did you call me last week?  
 Why did you call me last week?

*/'lʌndən/***London**

go to London  
 She went to London last weekend.  
 Did she go to London last weekend?  
 When did she go to London?

*/'sʌdənlɪ/***bus stop suddenly adv.**

Suddenly, the car stopped near the bus stop.  
 Why did the car stop near the bus stop, suddenly?

*/smɔɪl/ /'plezəntli/***smile v. pleasantly adv.**

Look, the little girl is smiling pleasantly.  
 She always smiles pleasantly.

*/ʌnde'stænd/ /ʌnde'stʊd/***understand v. understood**

I didn't understand it at first. But now I understand.  
 I understand.  
 I don't understand.  
 Do you understand?

*/spi:k/ /spə:k/***speak v. spoke**

Do you speak English/Chinese?  
 She spoke so quickly. I didn't understand.

*/hænd/***hand n.**

hand+bag  
 I cleaned my hands.  
 Did you clean your hands?  
 Why didn't you clean your hands?

*/'pɒkɪt/***pocket n.**

in the pocket  
 He always puts his phone in the pocket.  
 He put his phone in the pocket.

*/fri:z/***phrase n. phrasebook**

I have a phrasebook.  
 I must buy a phrasebook.  
 I buy a phrasebook yesterday.

*/'sleətlɪ/***slowly adv.**

walk slowly  
 He is old, and he is walking slowly.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法+知识点

1 T:What did Mrs. Mills do last week?  
S:She went to London.

2 T:Does she know London well?  
S:No, she doesn't.

3 T:Did she lose her way?  
S:Yes, she did.

4 T:Where did she see a man?  
S:Near a bus stop.

5 T:What did she say to him?  
S:She said, ‘Excuse me. Can you tell  
me the way to King Street, please?’

6 T:Did the man smile?  
S:Yes, he did.

7 T:Did the man understand English?  
S:No, he didn't.

8 T:What did the man do?  
S:He put his hand into his pocket and  
took out a phrase book.

9 T:Did he speak English?  
S:No, he didn't.

10 T:Was he a tourist?  
S:Yes, he was.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Mrs. Mills went to London  
last week.

S:Did Mrs. Mills go to London last week?

T:When...?

S:When did Mrs. Mills go to London?

2 T:Ask me if she saw a man near a  
bus stop.

S:Did she see a man near a bus stop?

T:Where...?

S:Where did she see a man?

4 T:Ask me if he spoke German.

S:Did he speak German?

T:What language...?

S:What language did he speak?

5 T:Ask me if he took a phrase book  
out of his pocket.

S:Did he take a phrase book out of his  
pocket?

T:What...?

S:What did he take out of his pocket?

3 T:Ask me if she said ‘Excuse me’.

S:Did she say ‘Excuse me’?

T:What...?

S:What did she say?

### homework

绿皮书 第73课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

总结 v. 不规则的过去式

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/'hʌridli/***hurriedly adv.**

He shaved hurriedly.

He left the house hurriedly.

leave—left

*/kʌt/***cut — cut**

Be careful. Don't cut yourself.

Can you cut it for me?

I cut myself yesterday morning.

*/'θɜ:stɪli/***thirstily adv.**

He is drinking the water thirstily.

*/gri:t/***greet v. warmly**

They are greeting each other warmly.

He saw me and greeted me warmly.

**shaved**

Why did he cut himself this morning?

Because he shaved hurriedly.

*/tʊk / eɪt/***took ate**

What did he take?

He took a cake.

What did he do with it?

He ate it quickly.

*/geɪv / /dræŋk/***gave drank**

What did you give him?

I gave him a glass of water.

What did he do with it?

He drank it thirstily.

*/met/***met greeted**

When did you meet her?

I met her the day before yesterday.

How did she greet you?

She greeted me warmly.

**went slowly**

Why did you both arrive home late?

Because the bus went slowly.

**enjoyed**

How did you enjoy yourselves last night?

We enjoyed ourselves very much.

*/swæm /***swam**

How did she swim this afternoon?

She swam very well.

**homework**

绿皮书 第74课的写作练习

单词造句

v. 过去式(不规则)总结

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ə'gəʊ/***ago**

N years ago  
 N months ago  
 N days ago  
 N hours ago  
 N minutes ago  
 N seconds ago  
 I met your mom 30 years ago.  
 I went to Beijing 3 days ago.

*/baɪ/      /bɔ:t/***buy — bought**

buy sb. sth./ buy sth. for sb.  
 My dad bought this TV for us 2 months ago.  
 She bought her boyfriend a watch.

*/peə/***pair**

a pair of shoes/glasses  
 She cleaned this pair of shoes yesterday.  
 He bought a pair of shoes for his girlfriend three days ago.

*/'fæʃən/***fashion n.**

in fashion  
 This is in fashion.  
 out of fashion  
 Is this out of fashion?

*/ʌn'kʌmftəbəl/***uncomfortable adj.**

un+tidy  
 She feels uncomfortable.  
 Does she feel uncomfortable?  
 We must call the doctor.

*/weər/      /wɔ:/***wear — wore**

穿戴  
 She wears a pair of black shoes.  
 She wore a white dress yesterday.

**Comprehension**

1 T:What does the lady show to the shop assistant?  
 S:A pair of shoes.

2 T:Whose shoes are they?  
 S:Her sister's.

3 T:Why does she show him those shoes?  
 S:Because she wants a pair of shoes like those.

4 T:What size does she want?  
 S:Size five.

5 T:What colour does she want?  
 S:Black.

6 T:Where did her sister buy those shoes?  
 S:In the U.S.

7 T:When did the shop have some shoes like these?  
 S:A month ago.

8 T:Can they get any shoes like those now?  
 S>No, they can't.

9 T:Why can't they get any?  
 S:Because they're not in fashion this year.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if I have any size five shoes.

S:Do you have any size five shoes?

T:What size...?

S:What size shoes do you have?

2 T:Ask me if my sister bought a pair last month.

S:Did your sister buy a pair last month?

T:When...?

S:When did your sister buy a pair?

3 T:Ask me if we had shoes like this a month ago.

S:Did you have shoes like this a month ago?

T:How long ago...?

S:How long ago did you have shoes like this?

4 T:Ask me if they were in fashion last year.

S:Were they in fashion last year?

T:When...?

S:When were they in fashion?

5 T:Ask me if they look uncomfortable.

S:Do they look uncomfortable?

T:Why...?

S:Why do they look uncomfortable?

### homework

绿皮书 第75课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**looked at that photograph**

- 1 When did you look at that photograph?
- 2 an hour ago
- 3 I looked at that photograph an hour ago.

**watched television**

- 1 When did they watch television?
- 2 Every day last week.
- 3 They watched television every day last week.

**painted that bookcase**

- 1 When did he paint that bookcase?
- 2 The year before last.
- 3 He painted that bookcase the year before last.

**jumped off the wall**

- 1 When did the cat jump off the wall?
- 2 A minute ago.
- 3 It jumped off the wall a minute ago.

**worked in an office**

- 1 When did you work in an office?
- 2 The year before last.
- 3 I worked in an office the year before last.

**dusted the cupboard**

- 1 When did she dust the cupboard?
- 2 Three days ago.
- 3 She dusted the cupboard three days ago.

**thanked her father**

- 1 When did she thank her father?
- 2 An hour ago.
- 3 She thanked her father an hour ago.

**typed those letters**

- 1 When did she type those letters?
- 2 A month ago.
- 3 She typed those letters a month ago.

**walked across the park**

- 1 When did he walk across the park?
- 2 Last week.
- 3 He walked across the park last week.

**v. — v.ed**

- 1 She goes to town every day.
- 2 She \_\_\_ to town yesterday.
- 3 She meets her friends every day.
- 4 They drink some milk every day.
- 5 He swims in the river every day.
- 6 She takes him to school every day,
- 7 He cuts himself every morning.

**homework**

绿皮书 第76课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/ə'pɔɪnəmənt/***appointment n.**

have an appointment

Do you have an appointment?

No, I don't have an appointment.

*/'ɜ:dʒənt/***urgent adj.**

Urgent Care

Walk in

No appointment needed

*/tɪl/***till**

Wait here till I come back.

**Comprehension**

1 T: Is Mr. Croft at the doctor's or at the dentist's?  
 S: He's at the dentist's.

2 T: Who is Mr. Croft talking to?  
 S: He's talking to a nurse.

3 T: What does Mr. Croft want to do?  
 S: He wants to see the dentist.

4 T: Does he have an appointment?  
 S: No, he doesn't.

5 T: Why does he want to see the dentist?  
 S: Because he has a terrible toothache.

6 T: How urgent is it?  
 S: It's very urgent.

7 T: Can the dentist see him now?  
 S: No, he can't.

8 T: Why can't the dentist see him now?  
 S: Because he's very busy at the moment.

9 T: What time can the dentist see him today?  
 S: At 2.0 p.m.

10 T: Can't Mr. Croft wait till this afternoon?  
 S: Yes, he can, but his toothache can't.

1 T:Ask me if Mr. Croft wants to see the dentist.

S:Does Mr. Croft want to see the dentist?

T:Who...?

S:Who does Mr. Croft want to see?

2 T:Ask me if it's urgent.

S:Is it urgent?

T:Why ...?

S:Why is it urgent?

3 T:Ask me if he can come on Monday, April 24th. S:Can he come on Monday, April 24th?

T:Why can't ...?

S:Why can't he come on Monday, April 24th?

4 T:Ask me if he must see the dentist now.

S:Must he see the dentist now?

T:Why...?

S:Why must he see the dentist now?

5 T:Ask me if he can wait till this afternoon.

S:Can he wait till this afternoon?

T:Why can't...?

S:Why can't he wait till this afternoon?

### homework

绿皮书 第77课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 78

## Practices

### saw

1 It's eight o'clock. When did you see him?

2 Half an hour ago.

3 I saw him at half past seven.

### painted

1 It's 1988.

2 When did you paint this room?

3 Last year.

4 I painted it in 1987.

### went

1 It's Friday.

2 When did she go to London?

3 The day before yesterday.

4 She went to London on Wednesday.

### met

1 It's the fifth of January.

2 When did she meet him?

3 Two months ago.

4 She met him on the fifth of November.

### bought

1 It's June.

2 When did Mr. Jones buy that car?

3 Last month.

4 He bought it in May.

### arrived

1 It's a quarter past eleven.

2 When did they arrive?

3 Half an hour ago.

4 They arrived at a quarter to eleven.

**lost**

- 1 It's Sunday.
- 2 When did he lose his pen?
- 3 Yesterday.
- 4 He lost it on Saturday.

**called**

- 1 It's March.
- 2 When did you call the doctor?
- 3 The month before last.
- 4 I called the doctor in January.

**bought**

- 1 It's 1988.
- 2 When did they buy this house?
- 3 The year before last.
- 4 They bought it in 1986.

**spoke**

- 1 It's August the first.
- 2 When did she speak to him?
- 3 A month ago.
- 4 She spoke to him on July the first.

**homework**

绿皮书 第78课的写作练习

整理 v.不规则过去式

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**have got****肯定句:**

I have a car.

I have got a car.

I've got...

**a lot of****既可修饰cn. 也可修饰un. 肯定句/否/疑问**

I have got a lot of money.

We have got a lot of potatoes.

**much****much + un. (否/疑)**

There isn't much tea on the table.

Is there much tea on the table?

Did you buy much food?

We haven't got much money.

How much money do you want?

**have got****肯定句: 三单**

He has a car.

He has got a car. He's got...

**主+have/has got+其他****have got****否定句:**

I don't have a car.

I haven't got a car.

**many****many + cn.**

There aren't many dishes in the kitchen.

Are there many dishes in the kitchen?

Did you buy many books?

We don't know many people.

How many photos did you take?

**have got****否定句: 三单**

He doesn't have a car.

He hasn't got a car.

**主+haven't/hasn't got+其他.****have got****疑问句:**

Do you have a car?

Have you got a car?

**have got****疑问句: 三单**

Does he have a car?

Has he got a car?

**Have/Has+主+got+其他?**

*/ ˈʃɒpɪŋ / /lɪst/*  
**shopping list**

make a shopping list

He's gonna make a shopping list.

He's making a shopping list.

He makes a shopping list every Friday.

He made a shopping list last night.

I can make a shopping list for you.

You must make a shopping list.

*/ ˈvedʒtəbəl /*  
**vegetable n.**

v. clean / buy sth. / want / like

I bought some vegetables for my parents yesterday.

I'm cleaning the vegetables.

Do you want some vegetable?

*/ ni:d /*  
**need v.**

I need some help/vegetables.

Do you need help?

*/ ˈmʌni /*  
**money n.**

v. give/need/put sth. on sw./

I need some money.

Can you give me some money?

Please, put the money on the desk.

**homework**

单词+语法造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Comprehension**1 T: Is Tom making a shopping list?  
S: No, he isn't.2 T: Who is making a shopping list?  
S: Carol is.3 T: What do they need this week?  
S: They need a lot of things.4 T: Is she going to the grocer's?  
S: Yes, she is.5 T: Have they got any tea and sugar?  
S: No, they haven't got much tea and sugar.6 T: Is she going to the greengrocer's?  
S: Yes, she is.7 T: Why must she go to the greengrocer's?  
S: Because they haven't got many tomatoes.8 T: Have they got any meat?  
S: No, they haven't got any at all.9 T: Is she going to get any beer and wine?  
S: No, she isn't.10 T: Have they got much money?  
S: No, they haven't.

1 T:Ask me if Carol is making a shopping list.

S:Is Carol making a shopping list?

T:Why ... ?

S:Why is Carol making a shopping list?

2 T:Ask me if they need a lot of things.

S:Do they need a lot of things?

T:What ... ?

S:What do they need?

3 T:Ask me if Carol must go to the grocer's.

S:Must Carol go to the grocer's?

T:Where ... ?

S:Where must Carol go?

4 T:Ask me if she's going to get beer and wine.

S:Is she going to get beer and wine?

5 T:Ask me if they have got much money.

S:Have they got much money?

### homework

绿皮书 第79课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 80

## Words

/'grəʊərɪz/  
**groceries n.**

/fru:t/  
**fruit n.**

I bought some fruit for you.

Where did you buy these?

We're gonna clean these fruit in the kitchen.

/'steɪʃənəri/  
**stationery n.**

glue

envelop

writing paper

/'nju:zɪdʒənt/  
**newsagent n.**

That newsagent greeted me warmly yesterday.

Do you know that newsagent?

/'kemɪst/  
**chemist n.**

Just go to the chemist's to get some medicine.

### cheese — much

- 1 Have you got any?
- 2 I need a lot of cheese.
- 3 I haven't got much.

### envelopes — many

- 1 Has he got any?
- 2 He needs a lot of envelopes.
- 3 He hasn't got many.

### bread — much

- 1 Have they got any?
- 2 They need a lot of bread.
- 3 They haven't got much.

### eggs — many

- 1 Has she got any?
- 2 She needs a lot of eggs.
- 3 She hasn't got many.

### writing paper — much

- 1 Has he got any?
- 2 He needs a lot of writing paper.
- 3 He hasn't got much.

### magazines — many

- 1 Have I got any?
- 2 You need a lot of magazines.
- 3 You haven't got many.

### beef — much

- 1 Have you got any?
- 2 I need a lot of beef.
- 3 I haven't got much.

### butter — much

- 1 Has she got any?
- 2 She needs a lot of butter.
- 3 She hasn't got much.

### bananas — many

- 1 Have they got any? .
- 2 They need a lot of bananas.
- 3 They haven't got many.

### medicine — much

- 1 Have I got any?
- 2 You need a lot of medicine.
- 3 You haven't got much.

### homework

绿皮书 第80课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/bɑ:θ/***bath n.**

have a bath

Did you have a bath?

I had a bath 2 hours ago.

She is having a bath.

I'm gonna have a bath tonight.

*/'redi/ /'ni:li:/***ready nearly adv.**

Are you ready?

I'm nearly ready.

*/'dɪnə/***dinner n.**

have dinner

I'm going to have dinner with my husband tonight.

She had dinner with me last night.

They're having dinner together.

*/'restərɒnt/***restaurant**

go to a restaurant

Last night, we went to a restaurant.

Did you go to a restaurant last night?

when/who/where/why...

*/rəʊst/***roast**

roast beef

Do you like roast beef?

Yes, I want some roast beef.

## Grammar

**have 吃喝玩乐**

1 have breakfast

2 have lunch

3 have dinner

4 have a meal

**have 吃喝玩乐**

1 have fun

2 have a good time

3 have a haircut

4 have a swim

**have 吃喝玩乐**

1 have some milk

2 have tea

3 have coffee

4 have a drink

**have 吃喝玩乐**

1 have a bath

2 have a party

3 have a holiday

4 have a lesson

5 have a cigarette

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Is Tom downstairs?  
S: No, he isn't.

2 T: Where is Tom?  
S: He's upstairs.

3 T: What is he doing?  
S: He's having a bath.

4 T: Who is going to have dinner with Carol and Tom tonight?  
S: Sam is.

5 T: Is dinner ready?  
S: No, it's nearly ready.

6 T: When is dinner going to be ready?  
S: At seven o'clock.

7 T: What did Sam and Tom do today?  
S: They had lunch together.

8 T: What did they have for lunch?  
S: Roast beef and potatoes.

9 T: Is Carol disappointed?  
S: Yes, she is.

10 T: What are they going to have for dinner?  
S: They are going to have roast beef and potatoes again.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Tom is upstairs.  
S: Is Tom upstairs?  
T: Where ...?  
S: Where is Tom?

2 T: Ask me if Sam wants a glass of whisky.  
S: Does Sam want a glass of whisky?  
T: What ...?  
S: What does Sam want?

3 T: Ask me if they can have dinner at seven.  
S: Can they have dinner at seven?  
T: What time ...?  
S: What time can they have dinner?

4 T: Ask me if they went to a restaurant for lunch.  
S: Did they go to a restaurant for lunch?  
T: Where ...?

S: Where did they go for lunch?

5 T: Ask me if they had roast beef for lunch.  
S: Did they have roast beef for lunch?  
T: What ...?  
S: What did they have for lunch?

### homework

绿皮书 第81课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

/ˈbrekfəst/

**breakfast**

have breakfast

Did you have breakfast?

/ˈhaɪkʌt/

**haircut n.**

have a haircut

I'm having a haircut.

/ˈpa:ti/

**party**

have a party

We're gonna have a party tonight.

/ˈholədeɪ/

**holiday**

have a holiday

We're gonna have a holiday.

Are you gonna have a holiday?

When are you gonna have a holiday?

You look so tired. You must have a holiday.

**Practices****时态+情态动词复习**

be + v.ing

be + going to v.

do/does

can

must

was/were/did

**have breakfast**

1 What are they going to do?

2 They are going to have breakfast.

**have a haircut**

1 What did he do?

2 He had a haircut.

**have lunch**

1 What are they doing?

2 They are having lunch.

**have a lesson**

1 What are they doing?

2 They are having a lesson.

**have tea**

1 What must they do?

2 They must have tea.

**have a party**

1 What did they do?

2 They had a party.

3 And they have a party every Friday.

**have dinner**

1 What did they do?

2 They had dinner.

**have a holiday**

1 What must they do?

2 They must have a holiday.

**have a meal**

1 What must they do?

2 They must have a meal.

**have a good time**

1 What are they going to do?

2 They are going to have a good time.

**homework**

绿皮书 第82课的写作练习：总结大结构；

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**现在完成时****肯定句：**主+ have done (过去分词) + 其他

I have had lunch. / I've had lunch.

He has had lunch. / He's had lunch.

have 原型

has 三单

having 现在分词

had 过去式

had 过去分词

**肯定句：****主+have done(过去分词)+其他**

过去分词: 规则变化 ed / 不规则变化

I have had lunch.

I am having lunch.

**否定句：****主+have/has+not+done(过去分词)+其他**

I have not had lunch.

I haven't had lunch.

**一般疑问句：****Have/Has+主语+done(过去分词)+其他?**

Have you had lunch?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

**含义****用法一：言之过去，意在当下(潜台词)**

Do you want to have some food?

No, thanks. I have just had some food.

I have just had some food. I'm full now.

Have a cigarette?

No, thanks. I have just had one.

Have a drink with us.

No, thanks. I have just had one glass of beer.

It's cold in here.

Oh, I have just aired the room.

Let's go to a restaurant.

No! I have just cooked a meal.

**Words***/mes/***mess n.**

untidy adj.

The eggs fell on the floor and made a mess.

Be careful, don't make a mess.

*/pæk/***pack v.**

pack my bag

I packed my bag yesterday.

Did you pack your bag yesterday?

When did you pack your bag?

Why did you pack your bag yesterday?

I've packed my bag.

Have you packed your bag?

*/'su:tkeɪs/***suitcase n.**

suit + case

pack/clean/buy/need/want...

I packed my suitcase last night.

He's going to pack his suitcase.

He is cleaning his suitcase.

Are you going to buy a new suitcase?

Mom, can I buy a new suitcase?

*/li:v/      /left/      /ɔ:l'redi/***leave v. — left — left already**

He's already left.

He's gonna leave. Just talk to him.

Are you going to leave soon?

**homework**

单词造句\*3; 红皮书 have + done ; 请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T:Aren't Tom and Carol having dinner?  
S:No, they aren't.

2 T:Are they having lunch?  
S:Yes, they are.

3 T:Who is that at the door?  
S:It's Sam.

4 T:Why doesn't Sam want to have  
lunch with them?  
S:Because he's already had lunch.

5 T:What time did Sam have lunch?  
S:At half past twelve.

6 T:Has Sam already had a cup of  
coffee?  
S:Yes, he has.

7 T:What are Tom and Carol going to  
do?  
S:They're going to have a holiday.

8 T:What are they doing today?  
S:They're packing their suitcases.

9 T:Has Sam already had his holiday  
this year?  
S:Yes, he has.

10 T:Where did he go for his holiday?  
S:He stayed at home.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Sam had lunch at half  
past twelve.  
S:Did Sam have lunch at half past  
twelve?  
T:When ...?  
S:When did Sam have lunch?

2 T:Ask me if Sam has just had a cup  
of coffee.  
S:Has Sam just had a cup of coffee?  
T:What ...?  
S:What has Sam just had?

3 T:Ask me if they can have coffee in  
the living room.  
S:Can they have coffee in the living room?  
T:Where ...?  
S:Where can they have coffee?

4 T:Ask me if the room is very untidy.  
S:Is the room very untidy?  
T:Why...?  
S:Why is the room very untidy?

5 T:Ask me if Tom and Carol are  
going to have a holiday.  
S:Are Tom and Carol going to have a  
holiday?  
T:When ...?  
S:When are Tom and Carol going to  
have a holiday?

### homework

绿皮书 第83课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**vegetables fruit**

- 1 Have you had any vegetables?
- 2 I haven't had any vegetables.
- 3 Do you want to have some fruit?
- 4 I've just had some fruit.

**beans peas**

- 1 Has he had any beans?
- 2 He hasn't had any beans.
- 3 Does he want to have some peas?
- 4 He's just had some peas.

**coffee tea**

- 1 Have they had any coffee?
- 2 They haven't had any coffee.
- 3 Do they want to have some tea?
- 4 They've just had some tea.

**apples peaches**

- 1 Have you had any apples?
- 2 I haven't had any apples.
- 3 Do you want to have some peaches?
- 4 I've just had some peaches.

**cabbage lettuce**

- 1 Have you had any cabbage?
- 2 I haven't had any cabbage.
- 3 Do you want to have some lettuce?
- 4 I've just had some lettuce.

**chicken steak**

- 1 Have you had any chicken?
- 2 I haven't had any chicken.
- 3 Do you want to have some steak?
- 4 I've just had some steak.

**homework**

绿皮书 第84课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/ˈpærɪs/

**Paris**

go to Paris

live in Paris

I lived in Paris three years ago.

I went to Paris five years ago.

When did you go to Paris?

/ˈsɪnəmə/ /fɪlm/

**cinema n. film n.**

go to a cinema

Did you go to a cinema last night?

see a film

I saw a film with my girlfriend yesterday.

When did you see a film with your girlfriend?

/ˈbju:tɪfəl/

**beautiful adj.**

It's beautiful.

Isn't it beautiful?

She's beautiful.

/ˈsɪti/

**city n.**

I don't want to live in the city.

Don't you want to live in the big city?

I want to live in the country.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**have been/gone to**

Sally went to Paris last week.

She arrived in Beijing yesterday.

She has been to Paris. 去过

**have been/gone to**

Sally went to Paris last week.

She is in Paris now.

She has gone to Paris. 去了

go — went — gone

**have been/gone to**

Jim is on holiday.

He's \_\_\_\_ to Italy.

gone

**have been/gone to**

Hello! I've just \_\_\_\_ to the shops.

I've bought a lot of things. (been)

**have been/gone to**

Alice isn't here at the moment.

She's \_\_\_\_\_ to the shop to get a newspaper. (gone)

**have been/gone to**

Tom has \_\_\_\_ out.

He'll be back in about an hour. (gone)

**have been/gone to**

'Are you going to the bank'

'No, I've already \_\_\_\_ to the bank'.  
(been)

## Comprehension

1 T:Has Ken been at home all day?  
S:No, he hasn't.

2 T:Has he just been to the cinema?  
S:Yes, he has.

3 T:Has George ever seen the film  
'Paris in the Spring'?  
S:Yes, he has.

4 T:When did George see the film?  
S:He saw it last year.

5 T:Did he see it at the cinema?  
S:No, he didn't. He saw it on television.

6 T:Has George ever been to Paris?  
S:No, he hasn't.

7 T:Has Ken been to Paris?  
S:Yes, he has.

8 T:What's Paris like?  
S:It's a beautiful city.

9 T:What time of year was Ken in Paris?  
S:He was there in April.

10 T:What was the weather like in April?  
S:It was awful. It rained all the time.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Ken has been to the cinema.  
S:Has Ken been to the cinema?  
T:Where ...?  
S:Where has Ken been?

2 T:Ask me if Ken saw 'Paris in the Spring'.  
S:Did Ken see 'Paris in the Spring'?  
T:What ...?  
S:What did Ken see?

3 T:Ask me if George saw it on television.  
S:Did George see it on television?  
T:When ...?  
S:When did George see it on television?

4 T:Ask me if Ken was in Paris in April.  
S:Was Ken in Paris in April?  
T:When ...?  
S:When was Ken in Paris?

5 T:Ask me if the weather was awful.  
S:Was the weather awful?  
T:What ...like?  
S:What was the weather like?

### homework

绿皮书 第85课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

红皮书查 have been/gone to

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**aired the room**

- 1 It's cold.
- 2 What has she just done?
- 3 She has just aired the room.

**cleaned their shoes**

- 1 What have they just done?
- 2 They have just cleaned their shoes.

**opened the window**

- 1 What has he just done?
- 2 He has just opened the window.

**sharpened his pencil**

- 1 What has he just done?
- 2 He has just sharpened his pencil.

**turned on the television**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just turned on the television.

**listened to the news**

- 1 What have they just done?
- 2 They have just listened to the news.

**boiled some milk**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just boiled some milk.

**answered the telephone**

- 1 What has he just done?
- 2 He has just answered the telephone.

**emptied the basket**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just emptied the basket.

**asked a question**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just asked a question.

**typed a letter**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just typed a letter.

**washed her hands**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just washed her hands.
- 3 They're clean now.

**walked across the park**

- 1 His shoes are very dirty.
- 2 What has he just done?
- 3 He has just walked across the park.

**painted the bookcase**

- 1 What's that smell?
- 2 What has he just done?
- 3 He has just painted the bookcase.

**dusted the cupboard**

- 1 What has she just done?
- 2 She has just dusted the cupboard.

**homework**

绿皮书 第86课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/ə'tendənt/ /rɪ'seփənɪst/  
**attendant n. receptionist n.**

I can't find the receptionist.  
Where is the reception?  
Do you know that receptionist?

/brɪŋ/ /brɔ:t/  
**bring v. - brought - brought**

Bring me some coffee.  
Bring it to me.  
I brought my car here five days ago.  
Did you bring your car here five days ago?  
When did you bring your car here?

/'gærɑ:ʒ/  
**garage n.**

There is a cat in the garage.  
They are having dinner in the garage.  
He bought a new garage last year.  
Why did he buy a new garage last year?

/kræʃ/  
**crash n.**

have a crash  
I had a car crash last night.  
Did you have a car crash last night?  
Who had a car crash last night?

/'læmp/ /peəst/  
**lamp-post n.**

I drove into a lamp-post.  
How did you drive into a lamp-post?  
We're gonna clean all the lamp-posts on this street.

/rɪ'peəl/ /trai/  
**repair v. try v.**

try to do sth.  
I am trying to talk to the receptionist.  
Are you trying to repair my computer?  
He tries to repair it every week.

### homework

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

## Story + Grammar

### aired the room

- 1 Have you aired the room yet?
- 2 I haven't aired the room yet.
- 3 I'm still airing it.

### typed those letters

- 1 Have you typed those letters yet?
- 2 I haven't typed those letters yet.
- 3 I'm still typing them.

### cleaned your shoes

- 1 Have you cleaned your shoes yet?
- 2 I haven't cleaned my shoes yet.
- 3 I'm still cleaning them.

### washed the dishes

- 1 Have you washed the dishes yet?
- 2 I haven't washed the dishes yet.
- 3 I'm still washing them.

### sharpened your pencil

- 1 Have you sharpened your pencil yet?
- 2 I haven't sharpened my pencil yet.
- 3 I'm still sharpening it.

### dusted the dressing table

- 1 Have you dusted the dressing table yet?
- 2 I haven't dusted the dressing table yet.
- 3 I'm still dusting it.

**painted the bookcase**

- 1 Have you painted the bookcase yet?
- 2 I haven't painted the bookcase yet.
- 3 I'm still painting it.

**shaved**

- 1 Have you shaved yet?
- 2 I haven't shaved yet.
- 3 I'm still shaving.

**packed your suitcase**

- 1 Have you packed your suitcase yet?
- 2 I haven't packed my suitcase yet.
- 3 I'm still packing it.

## Comprehension

---

1 T: Is Mr. Wood's car ready yet?  
S: No, it isn't.

6 T: Are they still working on it?  
S: Yes, they are.

2 T: Does the attendant know?  
S: No, he doesn't.

7 T: Did Mr. Wood have a crash?  
S: Yes, he did.

3 T: What's the number of Mr. Wood's car?  
S: It's LFZ 312 G.

8 T: What happened?  
S: He drove it into a lamp post.

4 T: How long has Mr. Wood's car been at the garage?  
S: It has been there for three days.

9 T: Can the mechanics repair the car?  
S: Not really, but they're trying to repair it.

5 T: Have the mechanics finished yet?  
S: No, they haven't.

10 T: What does Mr. Wood need?  
S: He needs a new car.

1 T:Ask me if the number is LFZ 312 G.  
 S:Is the number LFZ 312 G?  
 T:What ... ?  
 S:What's the number?

4 T :Ask me if he drove into a lamp post.  
 S:Did he drive into a lamp post?  
 T:When ... ?  
 S:When did he drive into a lamp post?

2 T:Ask me if he brought the car here three days ago.  
 S:Did he bring the car here three days ago?  
 T:How long ago ... ?  
 S:How long ago did he bring the car here?

5 T:Ask me if Mr. Wood needs a new car.  
 S:Does Mr. Wood need a new car?  
 T:What ... ?  
 S:What does Mr. Wood need?

3 T:Ask me if the mechanics have finished yet.  
 S:Have the mechanics finished yet?

### homework

绿皮书 第87课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 88

## Practices

|       |        |        |
|-------|--------|--------|
| buy   | bought | bought |
| find  | found  | found  |
| get   | got    | got    |
| have  | had    | had    |
| hear  | heard  | heard  |
| leave | left   | left   |
| lose  | lost   | lost   |
| make  | made   | made   |
| meet  | met    | met    |
| send  | sent   | sent   |
| sweep | swept  | swept  |
| tell  | told   | told   |

### **buy–bought–bought**

- 1 Did you buy a new car last year?
- 2 Yes, I bought a new car last year.
- 3 What about Sam?
- 4 He hasn't bought a new car yet.

### **find–found–found**

- 1 Did you find your pen yesterday?
- 2 Yes, I found my pen yesterday.
- 3 What about Penny?
- 4 She hasn't found her pen yet.

### **have–had–had**

- 1 Did you have breakfast at 8 o'clock?
- 2 Yes, I had breakfast at 8 o'clock.
- 3 What about your mother?
- 4 She hasn't had breakfast yet.

### **leave–left–left**

- 1 Did you leave the office early this afternoon?
- 2 Yes, I left the office early this afternoon.
- 3 What about the boss?
- 4 He hasn't left the office yet.

### **hear–heard–heard**

- 1 Did you hear the news last night?
- 2 Yes, I heard the news last night.
- 3 What about Frank?
- 4 He hasn't heard the news yet.

### **make–made–made**

- 1 Did you make your bed this morning?
- 2 Yes, I made my bed this morning.
- 3 What about Susan and Jane?
- 4 They haven't made their beds yet.

### **meet–met–met**

- 1 Did you meet Harry yesterday?
- 2 Yes, I met Harry yesterday.
- 3 What about your wife?
- 4 She hasn't met Harry yet.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第88课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

have done 现在完成时  
用法二：一个动作done或者状态been  
从过去持续或重复到现在

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012.

Have you lived in Beijing for 10 years?

How long have you lived in Beijing?

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012.

for+一段时间 for three years

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012.

since+时间点 since 1984

I have lived in Beijing for 10 years/since 2012.

I have been here for 2 hours.

我学过英语。

我学英语十年了。

I studied English before.

I have studied English for ten years.

昨天下雨了。

这场雨下了4个小时。

It rained yesterday.

It has rained for four hours.

我曾住在这里。

我从1989年就住在这里。

I lived here.

I have lived here since 1989.

20年前，我当过老师

我当老师5年了。

I was a teacher twenty years ago.

I have been a teacher for five years.

## Words

/bɪ'li:v/

**believe**

Do you believe me?

I don't believe it.

/meɪ/

**may**

May I ....

I'm thirsty.

May I have some water?

/meɪ/

**may**

May I ....

It's too cold here.

May I close the door?

/waɪ/ /bɪ'keɪz/

**why because**

because +句子

Why are you having a meal at midnight?

Because I'm so hungry.

/sell/ /səʊld/  
**sell v. - sold - sold**

for sale

They sold their house yesterday.

Did they sell their house yesterday?

When did they sell their house?

/ri'tareɪ/  
**retire v.**

My father can stay with my mom, because he has just retired.

They retired last month.

Did they retire last month?

When did they retire?

/kɒst/  
**cost**

It costs 68,500.

Does it cost 68,500?

How much does it cost?

/paʊnd/ /'penɪ/ /pens/  
**pound penny — pence**

/wɜːθ/  
**worth every penny**

homework

单词造句\*3

红皮书 have + done 用法二

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Whose house is for sale?  
S:Ian's.

2 T:Who wants to have a look at it?  
S:Nigel does.

3 T:How long has Ian lived in the house?  
S:He's lived there for twenty years.

4 T:Since when has he been there?  
S:Since 1976.

5 T:Why does Ian want to sell his house?  
S:Because he's just retired and he wants to buy a small house in the country.

6 T:How much does Ian's house cost?  
S:It costs £68,500.

7 T:Is it a lot of money to Nigel?  
S:Yes, it is.

8 T:Does Nigel like the house?  
S:Yes, he does.

9 T:Why can't he decide at the moment?  
S:Because his wife must see the house first.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the house is for sale.  
S:Is the house for sale?  
T:What ... ?  
S:What is for sale?

2 T:Ask me if Ian has lived there for twenty years.  
S:Has Ian lived there for twenty years?  
T:How long ... ?  
S:How long has Ian lived there?

3 T:Ask me if he wants to sell it.  
S:Does he want to sell it?  
T:Why ... ?  
S:Why does he want to sell it?

4 T:Ask me if it costs £68,500.  
S:Does it cost £68,500?  
T:How much ... ?  
S:How much does it cost?

5 T:Ask me if his wife must see it first.  
S:Must his Wife see it first?  
T:Who ... ?  
S:Who must see it first?

### homework

绿皮书 第89课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的知识点

**read this book**

- 1 Did you read this book last week?
- 2 Yes, I read this book last week.
- 3 What about Penny?
- 4 She hasn't read this book yet.

**do sb's homework**

- 1 Did you do your homework last night?
- 2 Yes, I did my homework last night.
- 3 What about Ron?
- 4 He hasn't done his homework yet.

**swim across the river**

- 1 Did you swim across the river last week?
- 2 Yes, I swam across the river last week.
- 3 What about Ron and Betty?
- 4 They haven't swum across the river yet.

**go to London**

- 1 Did you go to London yesterday?
- 2 Yes, I went to London yesterday.
- 3 What about your mother?
- 4 She hasn't gone to London yet.

**see that film**

- 1 Did you see that film last week?
- 2 Yes, I saw that film last week.
- 3 What about the children?
- 4 They haven't seen that film yet.

**speak to the boss**

- 1 Did you speak to the boss this morning?
- 2 Yes, I spoke to the boss this morning.
- 3 What about Mr. Jones?
- 4 He hasn't spoken to the boss yet.

**put on sb's coat**

- 1 Did you put on your coat a minute ago?
- 2 Yes, I put on my coat a minute ago.
- 3 What about John?
- 4 He hasn't put on his coat yet.

**take sb.'s medicine**

- 1 Did you take your medicine this morning?
- 2 Yes, I took my medicine this morning.
- 3 What about Penny?
- 4 She hasn't taken her medicine yet.

**homework**

绿皮书 第90课的写作练习

查找红皮书have+done用法二

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

### 一般将来时 Will

|                |                  |   |
|----------------|------------------|---|
| 用法1            | 意愿, 临时决定 NCE1L91 |   |
| 结构2<br>will do | 肯定               | It's heavy.<br>I'll help you.               |
|                | 否定               | will+not=won't                              |
|                | 一般疑问             | will 提句首                                    |
|                | 难点               | will VS am/is/are going to do<br>不是预先考虑做的决定 |

### Words

/stɪl/

#### still

He's still here.

Is he still here?

Why is he still here?

/mju:v/

#### move

He is going to move tomorrow.

move to sw.

He moved to Beijing last year.

Did he move to Beijing last year?

When did he move to Beijing?

/mɪs/

#### miss v.

They miss you a lot.

Do you miss me?

/'neɪbər/

#### neighbour neighbor

Do you like your new neighbor?

I like them, but my husband doesn't like our new neighbor.

Why doesn't he like your neighbor?

They are talking to their neighbor.

/'pɜ:sən/      /'pi:pəl/

#### person — people

There is one person in our living room. Who is that?

There are three people in our kitchen. Who are they?

A lot of people are dancing in the street. Why are they dancing?

/pɔ:/

#### poor adj.

Look at these poor people. Let's help them.

Oh, that poor guy.

### homework

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T:Has Ian sold his house yet?  
S:Yes, he has.

2 T:Has he moved out yet?  
S:No, he hasn't.

3 T:When will he move to his new house?  
S:Tomorrow afternoon.

4 T:Has Ian always been a good neighbour?  
S:Yes, he has.

5 T:Will his neighbours miss him?  
S:Yes, they will.

6 T:When will the new people move in?  
S:The day after tomorrow.

7 T:Did Ian want to leave this house?  
S>No, he didn't.

8 T:Who wanted to sell the house?  
S:His wife did.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Ian sold his house last week.

S:Did Ian sell his house last week?  
T:When ... ?  
S:When did Ian sell his house?

2 T:Ask me if he's going to move tomorrow.  
S:Is he going to move tomorrow?  
T:When ... ?  
S:When is he going to move?

3 T:Ask me if they will all miss him.  
S:Will they all miss him?  
T:Why ... ?  
S:Why will they all miss him?

4 T:Ask me if Ian wanted to leave this house.

S:Did Ian want to leave this house?  
T:Why didn't ... ?  
S:Why didn't Ian want to leave this house?

5 T:Ask me if his wife wanted to leave.  
S:Did his wife want to leave?  
T:Why ... ?  
S:Why did his wife want to leave?

### homework

绿皮书 第91课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**rain**

- 1 It rained yesterday.  
2 Yes, and it'll rain again tomorrow.

**get up**

- 1 He got up late yesterday.  
2 Yes, and he'll get up late again tomorrow.

**sweep**

- 1 She swept the floor yesterday.  
2 Yes, and she'll sweep the floor again tomorrow.

**snow**

- 1 It snowed yesterday.  
2 Yes, and it'll snow again tomorrow.

**finish**

- 1 He finished work late yesterday.  
2 Yes, and he'll finish work late again tomorrow.

**repair**

- 1 They repaired his car yesterday.  
2 Yes, and they'll repair his car again tomorrow.

**telephone**

- 1 She telephoned him yesterday.  
2 Yes, and she'll telephone him again tomorrow.

**drive**

- 1 They drove home late yesterday.  
2 Yes, and they'll drive home late again tomorrow.

**shave**

- 1 He had a shave yesterday.  
2 Yes, and he'll have a shave again tomorrow.

**make an appointment**

- 1 He made an appointment yesterday.  
2 Yes, and he'll make an appointment again tomorrow.

**homework**

绿皮书 第92课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/paɪət/***pilot n.**

What's your husband's job?

He is a pilot.

*/rɪ'ts:n/***return n. v.**

return ticket

return to sw.

He will return to Beijing next week.

Will he return to Beijing next week?

When will he return to Beijing?

*/nju:/ /jɔ:k/***New York**

Have you ever been to New York?

Sally has gone to New York.

*/təʊkɪəʊ/***Tokyo**

I'll fly to Tokyo next month.

Will you fly to Tokyo next month?

When will you fly to Tokyo?

*/mə'drid/***Madrid**

They moved to Madrid last year.

Did they move to Madrid last year?

Why did they move to Madrid last year?

When did they move to Madrid?

*/flaɪ/**/flu:/**/fleən/***fly v. - flew - flown**

fly to sw.

They flew to New York this morning.

I will fly to Madrid tonight.

**Comprehension**

1 T:Who is our new next-door neighbour?  
S:Nigel.

6 T:When did he fly to Spain?  
S:He flew to Spain a week ago.

2 T:What does Nigel do for a living?  
S:He's a pilot.

7 T:When will he come back to London?  
S:He'll come back the week after next.

3 T:Will he fly to New York next month?  
S:Yes, he will.

8 T:How old is Nigel?  
S:He's only forty-one.

4 T:Where will he be the month after next?  
S:He'll be in Tokyo.

9 T:How many countries has Nigel been to?  
S:He's been to nearly every country in the world.

5 T:Where is he at the moment?  
S:He's in Madrid.

10 T:Why is his wife very unlucky?  
S:Because she usually stays at home.

1 T: Ask me if Nigel was in the R. A. F.  
S: Was Nigel in the R. A. F. ?  
T: When ... ?  
S: When was Nigel in the R. A. F. ?

4 T: Ask me if he's forty-one.  
S: Is he forty-one?  
T: How old ... ?  
S: How old is he?

2 T: Ask me if he will fly to New York next month.  
S: Will he fly to New York next month?  
T: When ... ?  
S: When will he fly to New York?

5 T: Ask me if Nigel is lucky.  
S: Is Nigel lucky?  
T: Why ... ?  
S: Why is Nigel lucky?

3 T: Ask me if he flew to Madrid a week ago.  
S: Did he fly to Madrid a week ago?  
T: When ... ?  
S: When did he fly to Madrid?

### homework

绿皮书 第93课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 94

## Words+Practices

/'æθənz/

### Athens

Will you go to Athens next week?  
No, I shan't go to Athens next week.  
I shall go to Beijing.

/bə'lɪn/

### Berlin

Will you and Jane fly to Berlin this week?  
No, we shan't fly to Berlin this week.  
We shall fly to Athens.

/bɒm'b ei/

### Bombay

Will Sam leave for Bombay next month?  
No, he won't leave for Bombay next month.  
He will leave for Berlin.

/dʒi'n i:və/

### Geneva

Will Penny return to Geneva next year?  
No, she won't return to Geneva next year.  
She will return to Bombay.

### London

Will you fly to London tomorrow?  
No, I shan't fly to London tomorrow.  
I shall fly to Geneva.

### Madrid

Will you and Tom go to Madrid next year?  
No, we shan't go to Madrid next year.  
We shall go to London.

/'mɒskəʊ/

## Moscow

Will Tom arrive from Moscow the week after next?

No, he won't arrive from Moscow the week after next.

He will arrive from Madrid.

## New York

Will Alice and Mary stay in New York next month?

No, they won't stay in New York next month.

They will stay in Moscow.

/'peərɪs/

## Paris

Will you fly to Paris tomorrow?

No, I shan't fly to Paris tomorrow.

I shall fly to New York.

/rəʊm/

## Rome

Will Tom and George go to Rome next year?

No, they won't go to Rome next year.

They will go to Paris.

### homework

绿皮书 第94课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

had better

含义：

最好 (去做某事, 否则会有麻烦/困难/危险)

**You had better take an umbrella.****主语+had better+动词原形+其他**

You'd better (注意:不表过去)

**sleep**

You'd better sleep.

**return the money**

You'd better return the money.

**see a doctor**

You'd better see a doctor.

**drink some water**

You'd better run quickly.

You had better eat some food.

He'd better drink some water.

**He had better not eat any food.****主语+had better+not+动词原形+其他****do that**

You'd better not do that.

**follow me**

You'd better not follow me.

**eat the ice cream**

You'd better not eat the ice cream.

## Words

*/rɪ'tɜːn/***return**

return tickets

You'd better buy the return tickets.

She's gonna buy the return tickets.

*/treɪn/***train n.**

Have you ever seen a train?

I have never seen a train.

Do you like train?

I liked train, but now I don't.

*/'steɪʃən/ /'plætfo:m/***station platform**

Excuse me. Where is the train station?

The train station is over there.

Which platform?

*/'plenti/***plenty**

plenty of + n.

There are plenty of eggs in the basket.

We've got plenty of time/money.

Have we got plenty of time/money?

Why haven't we got plenty of money?

*/bɑ:/***bar n.**

Is there a bar near here?

Excuse me, where is the bar?

They have just cleaned the bar.

He went to a bar last night.

*/'pɔ:tə/***porter**

Have you met that porter yet?

I'm gonna meet a porter tonight.

/kætʃ/ /kɔ:tʃ/

## catch — caught — caught

He's gonna catch a train.  
Is he gonna catch a train?  
Why is he gonna catch a train?  
They caught a bus last night.

/mɪs/

## miss

Oh man, we miss the train.  
Hurry up, don't miss the train.

### homework

单词造句\*3：请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Where do George and Ken want to go?  
S: To London.

2 T: Do they buy two single tickets?  
S: No, they don't. They buy two return tickets.

3 T: What time will the next train leave?  
S: At nineteen minutes past eight.

4 T: Where will their train leave from?  
S: From Platform Two, over the bridge.

5 T: How much time have they got?  
S: They've got twenty-two minutes.

6 T: Where do they go for a drink?  
S: To the bar next door to the station.

7 T: Have they missed the train?  
S: Yes, they have.

8 T: What's the matter with the clock?  
S: It's ten minutes slow.

9 T: When is the next train to London?  
S: In five hours' time.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if George wants two return tickets.

S: Does George want two return tickets?

T: How many...?

S: How many return tickets does George want?

2 T: Ask me if Platform Two is over the bridge.

S: Is Platform Two over the bridge?

T: Where...?

S: Where is Platform Two?

3 T: Ask me if the next train will leave at eight nineteen.

S: Will the next train leave at eight nineteen?

T: When...?

S: When will the next train leave?

4 T: Ask me if it's three minutes to eight.

S: Is it three minutes to eight?

T: What time...?

S: What time is it?

T: Ask me if they want to catch the eight nineteen.

S: Do they want to catch the eight nineteen?

T: Which train...?

S: Which train do they want to catch?

### homework

绿皮书 第95课的写作练习：文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 96

## Words+Practices

### Beijing

1 I went to Beijing a year ago.

2 What about you?

3 I shall go to Beijing in a year's time.

/'stɔ:khem/

### Stockholm

1 Tom flew to Stockholm two weeks ago.

2 What about Penny?

3 She will fly to Stockholm in two weeks' time.

/təukieɪə/

### Tokyo

1 Frank and Alan returned to Tokyo two days ago.

2 What about you and Jean?

3 We shall return to Tokyo in two days' time.

/'sɪdnɪ/

### Sydney

1 You went to Sydney a month ago.

2 What about me?

3 You will go to Sydney in a month's time.

/dʒe'nɪ:və/

### Geneva

1 A train left for Geneva an hour ago.

2 What about the next train?

3 It will leave for Geneva in an hour's time.

/rəʊm/

### Rome

1 Alice flew to Rome two days ago.

2 What about you?

3 I shall fly to Rome in two days' time.

/'lʌndən/

### London

1 Tom and Mary went to London an hour ago.

2 What about you and Jean?

3 We shall go to London in an hour's time.

/bɜ:ˈlɪn/

### Berlin

1 A plane left for Berlin three hours ago.

2 What about the next plane?

3 It will leave for Berlin in three hours' time.

### New York

1 Smith returned to New York a year ago.

2 What about Jones?

3 He will return to New York in a year's time.

/'pærɪs/

### Paris

1 Janet returned from Paris six weeks ago.

2 What about her husband?

3 He will return from Paris in six weeks' time.

### homework

绿皮书 第96课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/lɪ:v/ /left/***leave left left**

I left my bag upstairs.

I'll get it for you.

Did you leave your bag upstairs?

What did you leave upstairs?

*/dɪ'skrəib/***describe v.**

Can you describe that for me?

I can describe that.

You must describe that first.

*/zɪp/***zip n.**

I need to buy a new zip.

He's gonna buy a new zip soon.

You'd better buy a new zip.

I like this zip.

Do you like this zip?

*/'leɪbəl/***label n.**

There is a label on the bottle. have a look at it.

Is there a label on the bottle?

*/hændl/***handle n. v.**

He cleans the door handle everyday.

Does he clean the door handle everyday?

why/what/how often...

Can you handle this?

*/ə'dres/***address n.**

What's your address?

*/bɪ'lɒŋ/***belong v.**

belong to sb.

This cat belongs to me.

Does this cat belong to you?

Is this your cat?

**homework**

绿皮书 第97课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Story + Grammar**

|      |      |       |        |
|------|------|-------|--------|
| I    | me   | my    | mine   |
| she  | her  | her   | hers   |
| he   | him  | his   | his    |
| we   | us   | our   | ours   |
| they | them | their | theirs |
| you  | you  | your  | yours  |

There is a book on the desk.

It's her book/his book. (hers/his)

It's my book. (mine)

1 T:Did Mr. Hall leave his umbrella on the train?  
S:No, he didn't.

2 T:What did he leave on the train?  
S:A suitcase.

3 T:What does Mr. Hall's suitcase look like?  
S:It's a small blue case.

4 T:Does it have a zip?  
S:Yes, it does.

5 T:Is there a label on the case?  
S:Yes, there's a label on the handle with his name and address on it.

6 T:Is the first case Mr. Hall's?  
S:No, it isn't.

7 T:What's Mr. Hall's address?  
S:It's 83, Bridge Street.

8 T:Is that the address on the case?  
S:Yes, it is. That is the address on the case.

9 T:What's the matter with the case?  
S:The case doesn't belong to Mr. Hall.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if he left his suitcase on the train.

S:Did he leave his suitcase on the train?

T:Where ...?

S:Where did he leave his suitcase?

2 T:Ask me if the label is on the handle.

S:Is the label on the handle?

T:Where ...?

S:Where is the label?

3 T:Ask me if this case is his.

S:Is this case his?

T:Whose ...?

S:Whose is this case?

4 T:Ask me if he lives in Bridge Street.

S:Does he live in Bridge Street?

T:Where ...?

S:Where does he live?

5 T:Ask me if the case belongs to him.

S:Does the case belong to him?

T:Who ...?

S:Who does the case belong to?

### homework

绿皮书 第97课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**keys**

- 1 Are these your keys?  
2 Yes, they're mine.  
3 They belong to me.

**letter**

- 1 Is this John's letter?  
2 Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.

**clothes**

- 1 Are these my clothes?  
2 Yes, they're yours. They belong to you.

**passport**

- 1 Is this Jane's passport?  
2 Yes, it's hers. It belongs to her.

**watch**

- 1 Is this your watch?  
2 Yes, it's mine. It belongs to me.

**flowers**

- 1 Are these her flowers?  
2 Yes, they're hers. They belong to her.

**boat**

- 1 Is this my boat?  
2 Yes, it's yours. It belongs to you.

**phrase book**

- 1 Is this Jim's phrase book?  
2 Yes, it's his. It belongs to him.

**hammers**

- 1 Are these hammers Frank's and Harry's?  
2 Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

**car**

- 1 Is this our car?  
2 Yes, it's ours. It belongs to us.

**pens**

- 1 Are these the children's pens?  
2 Yes, they're theirs. They belong to them.

**homework**

绿皮书 第98课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 宾语从句

定义：一个句子充当宾语

这个句子叫宾语从句

主语 + v. + (that) + 句子

I hope that you've got some money. L79

I believe that this house is for sale. L89

I think that they'll move in the day after tomorrow. L91

主语 + v. + (that) + 句子

v. : think/believe/hope/say/understand/know

I think that you are right.

He believes that they will help him.

I hope that the food is safe here.

She says that she will help you.

We understand that we mustn't talk in the library.

Describe your Dad/Mom/best friend/GF/BF.....

I know that he is 29.

I know that he likes ice cream.

I know that he lives in Beijing.

I know that she/he will be a good wife/husband.

I know that he can play basketball.

商量做饭(两个菜), 讨论买东西。

I think that we need....

## Words

*/aʊ/***ow***/slɪp/***slip v.**

I slipped.

Did you slip?

How did you slip?

*/fɔ:/ /fɛl/ /'fɔ:lən/ /dəʊn'steəz/***fall fell fallen v. downstairs**

I fell downstairs.

Did you fall downstairs?

Be careful, don't fall down.

*/hɜ:t/ /bæk/***hurt v. back**

I hurt my back yesterday.

She hurts her back every summer.

Why does she hurt her back every summer?

**stand up**

sit down

/hɛlp/  
**help v.**

Can you help me?  
I need some help.  
I can help you.

**at once**

Can you come at once?  
Will the doctor see me at once?

/rɛks/ /reɪ/  
**X-ray**

She needs an X-ray.  
Does she need an X-ray?  
Why does she need an X-ray?  
Who needs an X-ray?

**homework**

单词造句\*3：完成宾语从句的两个练习活动；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

- 1 T:What did Andy do?  
S:He slipped and fell downstairs.
- 2 T:Has Andy hurt himself?  
S:Yes, he has.
- 3 T:Does he think he's hurt his back?  
S:Yes, he does.
- 4 T:Can Andy stand up?  
S>No, he can't.

- 5 T:What does Lucy think?  
S:She thinks that the doctor had better see Andy.
- 6 T:Who will phone the doctor?  
S:Lucy will.
- 7 T:What does the doctor say?  
S:The doctor says that he will come at once.

## Asking questions

- 1 T:Ask me if Andy slipped downstairs.  
S:Did Andy slip downstairs?  
T:How ...?  
S:How did Andy slip downstairs?
- 2 T:Ask me if Andy hurt himself.  
S:Did Andy hurt himself?  
T:How ...?  
S:How did Andy hurt himself?
- 3 T:Ask me if Andy can stand up.  
S:Can Andy stand up?  
T:Why can't ...?  
S:Why can't Andy stand up?

- 4 T:Ask me if the doctor had better see him.  
S:Had the doctor better see him?  
T:Who ...?  
S:Who had better see him?
- 5 T:Ask me if the doctor will come at once.  
S:Will the doctor come at once?  
T:When ...?  
S:When will the doctor come?

**homework**

绿皮书 第99课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**tired**

- 1 I feel tired.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 He says that he feels tired.

**X-ray**

- 1 I need an X-ray.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 He says that he needs an X-ray.

**headache**

- 1 I've got a headache.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 She says that she's got a headache.

**car**

- 1 We can repair this car.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 They say that they can repair this car.

**money**

- 1 We want some money.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 They say that they want some money.

**bus**

- 1 I must wait for a bus.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 She says that she must wait for a bus.

**cold**

- 1 I'm cold.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 She says that she is cold.

**thirsty**

- 1 We feel thirsty.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 They say that they feel thirsty.

**toothache**

- 1 We have toothache.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 They say that they have toothache.

**bus**

- 1 I shall catch the bus.
- 2 What's that?
- 3 He says that he will catch the bus.

**homework**

绿皮书 第100课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 直接引语 – 间接引语

The doctor says, "I will come at once."

The doctor says that he will come at once.

1. 引号去掉
2. 转换人称
3. 添加引导词 that

He says "I can do it."

He says that he can do it.

"I have just arrived in Scotland." says Leo.

Leo says that he has just arrived in Scotland.

He says, "I feel tired."

He says that he feels tired.

They say, "we will win the game."

They say that they will win the game.

He says that he must wait for his friends.

结论：间接引语属于宾语从句

## Words

/'skɒtlənd/  
**Scotland**

Scotland

England

Wales /weɪlz/

Northern Ireland /'aɪələnd/

Have you ever been to Scotland?

Where's John? He has gone to Scotland.

They will fly to Scotland next week.

/kɑ:d/  
**card n.**

postcard

business card

ID card

We bought some postcards yesterday.

He buys a postcard every summer.

Do you have a business card?

Show me your ID card please.

/ju:θ/ /'hɒstɛl/ /'esəʊsi'eɪʃən/  
**youth hostel association**

YHA

/su:n/  
**soon**

He will write a letter soon.

Will he write a letter soon?

when/why/who...

/raɪt/ /rəʊt/ /'rɪtən/  
**write wrote written**

write to sb.

You haven't written to me for a long time!

I wrote a letter to him last week.

I'm gonna write you a letter soon.

## homework

单词造句\*3；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

### 反意疑问句

He doesn't say very much, does he?

前肯后否，前否后肯

前后人称时态应保持一致

### 反意疑问句

前肯后否，前否后肯

前后人称时态应保持一致

Leo is in Tokyo, isn't he?

Leo goes to school on foot, doesn't he?

Sam saw me last night, didn't he?

Cat can't swim, can it?

You have finished your work, haven't you?

Leo hasn't had his lunch, has he?

可用 right? 替代

## Comprehension

1 T:What does Grandmother want Penny to read to her?  
S:Jimmy's Card.

5 T:Does he say he'll write a letter soon?  
S:Yes, he does.

2 T:Where is Jimmy?  
S:He's in Scotland.

6 T:What else does he say?  
S:He says he hopes they are all well.

3 T:Has Jimmy been in Scotland for a long time?  
S>No, he hasn't.

7 T:Why does Grandmother ask Penny to speak up?  
S:Because she can't hear very well.

4 T:Where does he say he's staying?  
S:At a Youth Hostel.

8 T:How much can Jimmy write on a card?  
S:Not very much.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Jimmy has just arrived in Scotland.

S:Has Jimmy just arrived in Scotland?

T:Where ...?

S:Where has Jimmy just arrived?

2 T:Ask me if he's staying at a Youth Hostel.

S:Is he staying at a Youth Hostel?

T:Where ...?

S:Where is he staying?

3 T:Ask me if he says he'll write a letter soon.

S:Does he say he'll write a letter soon?

T:What else ...?

S:What else does he say?

4 T:Ask me if Grandmother can hear her.

S:Can Grandmother hear her?

T:Why can't ...?

S:Why can't Grandmother hear her?

5 T:Asks me if he hopes we are all well.

S:Does he hope we are all well?

T:What ...?

S:What does he hope?

### homework

绿皮书 第101课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**cold**

- 1 I am cold.  
2 What's that?  
3 She says she is cold.

**want a haircut**

- 1 I want a haircut.  
2 What's that?  
3 He says he wants a haircut.

**have a cold**

- 1 I have a cold.  
2 What's that?  
3 He says he has a cold.

**repair this car**

- 1 We must repair this car.  
2 What's that?  
3 They say they must repair this car.

**licence**

- 1 I need a licence.  
2 What's that?  
3 She says she needs a licence.

**headache**

- 1 I've got a headache.  
2 What's that?  
3 She says she's got a headache.

**sell this house**

- 1 I shall sell this house.  
2 What's that?  
3 He says he will sell this house.

**money**

- 1 We want some money.  
2 What's that?  
3 They say they want some money.

**have an earache**

- 1 I have an earache.  
2 What's that?  
3 He says he has an earache.

**cold**

- 1 I feel cold.  
2 What's that?  
3 She says she feels cold.

**homework**

绿皮书 第102课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/ɪ'nʌf/  
enough too  
adj. + enough  
too + adj.

**adj. + enough**

This is big enough.

**too + adj.**

This is too big.

**Words**

/ɪg'zæm/ /pɑ:s/

**exam n. pass v.**

pass the exam

I passed the exam.

Did you pass the exam?

How did you pass the exam?

Why didn't you pass the exam?

/feɪl/

**fail v.**

fail the exam

He failed the exam.

Did he fail the exam?

Why did he fail the exam?

/mæθ'mætɪks/

**mathematics math(s)**

I like math. What about you?

Do you like math?

Why don't you like math?

/'kwestʃən/ /'a:nəs/

**question n. answer v.**

answer my question

Can you answer my question?

I can't answer your question.

Why can't you answer my question?

I have already answered your question.

/i:zi/ /'dɪfɪkəlt/

**easy adj. difficult adj. hard**

I think that English is very easy.

Math is too difficult.

This is so easy.

/'peɪpə/

**paper**

I need some paper.

The English paper is too difficult.

The math paper is easy enough.

/mɑ:k/ /leʊ/

**mark n. low adj.**

I have got a low mark.

He has got a low mark.

Why hasn't he got a low mark?

/heɪt/

**hate v.**

I hate you.

Do you hate me?

Why do you hate me?

/gaɪ/

**guy n.**

I know that guy.

Do you know that guy?

/tɔ:p/

**top**

on the top of the paper/mountain

Look, that man is standing on the top of the mountain.

**homework**

单词造句\*3：初级红皮书查找 too enough；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Did Richard and Gary sit for an examination?  
S:Yes, they did.

2 T:Does Richard think he passed in English and Mathematics?  
S:Yes, he does.

3 T:What does Richard think about the questions?  
S:He thinks that they were very easy.

4 T:How about Gary?  
S:Gary thinks the English and Maths papers weren't easy enough for him.

5 T:Does Richard think he passed the French Test?  
S:No, he doesn't.

6 T:How many of the questions could Richard answer?  
S:Sixteen.

7 T:What about the rest of the questions?  
S:They were too difficult for Richard.

8 T:Do they like French tests?  
S>No, they don't.

9 T:How did the guy next to Gary do the exam?  
S:Very badly.

10 T:Did he write much?  
S>No, he didn't. He didn't write a word.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Richard thinks he passed.

S:Does Richard think he passed?

T:Why ...?

S:Why does Richard think he passed?

2 T:Ask me if the questions were easy.

S:Were the questions easy?

T:How ...?

S:How were the questions?

3 T:Ask me if he could answer all the questions.

S:Could he answer all the questions?

T:Why couldn't ...?

S:Why couldn't he answer all the questions?

4 T:Ask me if Richard hates French tests.

S:Does Richard hate French tests?

T:Why ...?

S:Why does Richard hate French tests?

5 T:Ask me if he wrote his name at the top of the paper.

S:Did he write his name at the top of the paper?

T:Where ...?

S:Where did he write his name?

### homework

绿皮书 第103课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

too + adj.

too adj.+ (for sb) + to do

It's too big for me to wear.

adj. + enough

adj.+enough+(for sb)+ to do

It's big enough for me to wear.

## Words

/tʃi:p/ /ɪk'spensɪv/

### **cheap expensive**

The car is too expensive for me to buy.

The bicycle is cheap enough for me to buy.

/'klevəl/ /stju:pɪd/

### **clever stupid**

He is too stupid to pass the exam.

He is clever enough to pass the exam.

/fref/ /steɪl/

### **fresh stale**

The bread is fresh enough to eat.

The bread is too stale to make a sandwich.

/laʊd/

### **loud low**

The music is loud enough for me to hear.

The music is too low for me to hear.

/haɪ/

### **high low**

The wall is too high for him to climb.

The wall is low enough for me to climb.

/ha:d/ /sɒft/

### **hard soft**

That apple is too hard to eat.

That pear is soft enough for her to eat.

/swi:t/ /səʊəl/

### **sweet sour**

The dish is too sweet for me to eat.

The dish is too sour for me to eat.

## Practices

### **answer all the questions**

1 Could he answer all the questions?

2 Yes, he could.

3 They were easy enough for him to answer.

### **answer all the questions**

1 Could he answer all the questions?

2 No, he couldn't.

3 They were too difficult for him to answer.

### **hear the stereo**

1 Could they hear the stereo?

2 Yes, they could.

3 It was loud enough for them to hear.

### **hear the stereo**

1 Could they hear the stereo?

2 No, they couldn't.

3 It was too low for them to hear.

**eat the orange**

- 1 Could she eat the orange?
- 2 Yes, she could.
- 3 It was sweet enough for her to eat.

**eat the orange**

- 1 Could she eat the orange?
- 2 No, she couldn't.
- 3 It was too sour for her to eat.

**buy the car**

- 1 Could he buy the car?
- 2 Yes, he could.
- 3 It was cheap enough for him to buy.

**buy the car**

- 1 Could he buy the car?
- 2 No, he couldn't.
- 3 It was too expensive for him to buy.

**climb the wall**

- 1 Could he climb the wall?
- 2 Yes, he could.
- 3 It was low enough for him to climb.

**climb the wall**

- 1 Could he climb the wall?
- 2 No, he couldn't.
- 3 It was too high for him to climb.

**homework**

绿皮书 第104课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## want / tell

want to do sth. = wanna do sth.

I want to buy a new car.

Do you want to buy a new car?

Why do you want to buy a new car?

## want / tell

tell sb. to do sth.

Please tell him to bring me some coffee.

## Words

/spel/ /spelt/

**spell spelt spelt**

Can you spell that for me?

How do you spell “Leo”?

/ɪn'telɪdʒənt/

**intelligent adj.**

AI: Artificial intelligence

/mɪ'steɪk/

**mistake**

make a mistake

You made a mistake.

Did I make a mistake?

You're making a mistake.

/'prezənt/

**present n.**

1 v. adj.

2 选用大结构

be doing

be going to do can

do/does

must

did

will

have done

3 四句型转换

/'dɪkʃənəri/

**dictionary n.**

He bought a new dictionary last week.

He is going to buy a new dictionary.

Why is he going to buy a new dictionary?

Tell him to buy a new dictionary.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

尝试 present 造100句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T:Bob's the office assistant, isn't he?  
S:Yes, he is.

6 T:How do you spell 'intelligent'?  
S:I-N-T-E-L-L-I-G-E-N-T.

2 T:Who wants to speak to Sandra?  
S:The boss does.

7 T:How did Sandra type it?  
S:With only one 'L'.

3 T:What must Bob do?  
S:He must tell Sandra to come to the  
boss's office.

8 T:What does the boss want Sandra  
to do?  
S:He wants her to type the letter  
again.

4 T:Does the boss want Sandra to  
come at once?  
S:Yes, he does.

9 T:What does he give Sandra?  
S:A little present. A dictionary.

5 T:What does the boss ask Sandra?  
S:He asks her how she spells  
'intelligent'.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the boss wants to speak  
to Sandra.

4 T:Ask me if the boss gave Sandra a  
dictionary.

S:Does the boss want to speak to  
Sandra?

S:Did the boss give Sandra a dictionary?

T:Who ...?

T:What...?

S:Who does the boss want to speak  
to?

S:What did the boss give Sandra?

2 T:Ask me if you spell 'intelligent'  
with one L.

5 T:Ask me if it will help her.

S:Do you spell 'intelligent' with one L.

S:Will it help her?

T:How ...?

T:How...?

S:How do you spell 'intelligent'?

S:How will it help her?

3 T:Ask me if Sandra typed it with one L.

### homework

S:Did Sandra type it with one L?

绿皮书 第105课的写作练习

T:How ...?

文章跟读至熟读成诵

S:How did Sandra type it?

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/'kærɪ/***carry**

The man is carrying a black bag.  
 Is the man carrying a black bag?  
 Why is the man carrying a black bag?  
 Tell him to carry it.  
 I want him to carry it.

*/kə'rekt/***correct**

correct the mistake  
 Tell her to correct the mistake.  
 She is going to correct it.  
 He corrected the mistake yesterday.

**Practices****suitcase**

- 1 Why is the lady pointing at the suitcase?  
 2 Because she wants him to carry it.  
 3 want sb. to do sth.

**photograph**

- 1 Why is he giving her his photograph?  
 2 Because he wants her to keep it.

**knife**

- 1 Why is she taking the knife from him?  
 2 Because she doesn't want him to cut himself.

**policeman**

- 1 Why is the policeman talking to the man and the woman?  
 2 Because he wants them to move it.

**be careful**

- 1 Why is the woman telling the girl to be careful?  
 2 Because she doesn't want her to lose it.

**hurt himself**

- 1 Why is she talking to the little boy?  
 2 Because she doesn't want him to hurt himself.

**describe**

- 1 Why is the attendant talking to the man?  
 2 Because he wants him to describe it.

**new car**

- 1 Why is the man showing his new car to his wife? 2 Because he doesn't want her to drive it.

**homework**

绿皮书 第106课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

adj. 比较级&最高级

#### 构成: 1

单音节形容词+er/est

small → smaller → smallest

new → newer → newest

old → older → oldest

adj. 比较级用法

主语+be+adj.er+than+比较对象

That man is older than this woman.

Yao is taller than Jet Li.

Jet Li is shorter than Yao.

#### 构成: 2

单词以e结尾+r/st

large → larger → largest

nice → nicer → nicest

The left dog is smaller than the right dog.

The right dog is bigger than the left dog.

The left shoes are newer than the right shoes.

#### 构成: 3

辅音字母+y结尾的, 把y变为i, 加er, est

pretty → prettier → prettiest

easy → easier → easiest

heavy → heavier → heaviest

adj. 最高级用法

主语+be+the+adj.est+n.+范围

主语+be+the+adj.est+n.+范围

My father is the coolest guy in the world.

My mom is the kindest person in the world.

Angelina Jolie is the hottest woman in Hollywood.

#### 构成: 4

辅+元+辅, 双写末尾辅音字母, 加er, est

big → bigger → biggest

hot → hotter → hottest

fat → fatter → fattest

adj. 最高级用法

主语+be+the+adj.est+n.+I've ever met/seen

This is the craziest thing I've ever done.

This is the cutest baby I've ever seen.

Charles Chaplin is the funniest guy I've ever seen.

Mother Teresa is the kindest woman I've ever known.

*/mædəm/***madam**

Madam, can I help you?

*/smɑ:t/ /'prɪti:/***smart pretty adj. as well**

It's a very smart dress.

Yes, and that woman is very pretty, too/as well.

*/su:t/***suit v.**

It suits you.

Does it suit me?

It doesn't suit you.

Suit yourself.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找形容词比较级&amp;最高级

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Story + Grammar****would like+n.**

1 I would like some tea.

2 I'd like some tea.

3 Would you like some tea?

**would like+to do sth.**

1 I would like to help him.

2 I'd like to help him.

3 Would you like to help him?

**Comprehension**

1 T: Does the lady like the blue dress?  
S: Yes, she does.

6 T: Which dress is smaller, the blue one or the green one?  
S: The blue one.

2 T: Does she say the blue dress is lovely?  
S: Yes, she does.

7 T: Does the lady think the blue dress is prettier than the green one?  
S: Yes, she does.

3 T: So why doesn't she want it?  
S: It's too small for her.

8 T: Does the green dress suit the lady?  
S: No, it doesn't.

4 T: Does she try the green dress as well?  
S: Yes, she does.

9 T: What does the lady ask the assistant to show her?  
S: A blue dress in a larger size.

5 T: What's the matter with the green dress?  
S: It's too small for her (and the colour doesn't suit her).

10 T: Why can't the assistant get the lady a blue dress of her size?  
S: Because the blue dress is the largest one in the shop.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if she likes this dress.  
S:Does she like this dress?  
T:What ...?  
S:What does she like?

2 T:Ask me if short skirts are in fashion now.  
S:Are short skirts in fashion now?  
T:Which ...?  
S:Which skirts are in fashion now?

3 T:Ask me if she likes the colour.  
S:Does she like the colour?  
T:Why doesn't ...?  
S:Why doesn't she like the colour?

4 T:Ask me if it suits her.  
S:Does it suit her?  
T:Why doesn't ...?  
S:Why doesn't it suit her?

5 T:Ask me if she's got a larger dress.  
S:Has she got a larger dress?  
T:Why hasn't ...?  
S:Why hasn't she got a larger dress?

### homework

绿皮书 第107课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

初级红皮书查找 would like

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**tall–taller–tallest**

- 1 This policeman is tall.
- 2 But that one is taller.
- 3 He is the tallest policeman I have ever seen.

**short–shorter–shortest**

- 1 This woman is short.
- 2 But that one is shorter.
- 3 She is the shortest woman I have ever seen.

**cheap–cheaper–cheapest**

- 1 These cars are cheap.
- 2 But those cars are cheaper.
- 3 They are the cheapest cars I have ever seen.

**sharp–sharper–sharpest**

- 1 This knife is sharp.
- 2 But that one is sharper.
- 3 It is the sharpest knife I have ever seen.

**pretty–prettier–prettiest**

- 1 This girl is pretty.
- 2 But that one is prettier.
- 3 She is the prettiest girl I have ever seen.

**lazy–lazier–laziest**

- 1 These office assistants are lazy.
- 2 But those office assistants are lazier.
- 3 They are the laziest office assistants I have ever seen.

**big–bigger–biggest**

- 1 This church is big.
- 2 But that one is bigger.
- 3 It is the biggest church I have ever seen.

**easy–easier–easiest**

- 1 This test is easy.
- 2 But that one is easier.
- 3 It is the easiest test I have ever seen.

**blunt–blunter–bluntest**

- 1 This knife is blunt.
- 2 But that one is blunter.
- 3 It is the bluntest knife I have ever seen.

**thin–thinner–thinnest**

- 1 This boy is thin.
- 2 But that one is thinner.
- 3 He is the thinnest boy I have ever seen.

**homework**

绿皮书 第108课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

little few

a little + un. 肯定含义

little + un. 否定含义

a few + cn. 肯定含义

few + cn. 否定含义

a little + un. (肯)

little + un. (否)

1 There is a little milk in the fridge.

You can drink that.

2 There is little milk in the fridge.

We need to buy some.

a few + cn. (肯)

few + cn. (否)

1 There are a few apples in the fridge.

2 There are few apples in the fridge.

It's nearly empty.

little few

a few + cn. 肯定含义

few + cn. 否定含义

I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely.

I've got few friends. I'm sad and lonely.

little few

a little + un. 肯定含义

little + un. 否定含义

They have a little money, so they're not very poor.

They have little money. They are very poor.

不规则比较级&amp;最高级

many/much — more — most

little — less — least

few — fewer — fewest

good — better — best

bad — worse — worst

## Words

*/aɪ'dɪə/***idea**

I have an idea.

That's a good idea.

*/'ti:s pju:nfʊl/***teaspoonful**

Do you want any sugar?

I want two teaspoonful.

*/'pɪtɪ/***pity**

What a pity!

It's a pity (that) + 句子

It's a pity he can't come.

It's a pity he didn't pass the exam.

*/ɪn'steɪd/***instead**

You can eat this cake instead.

Can I eat this cake instead?

*/əd'veɪs/***advice n.**

That's good advice.

Is that good advice?

Why is that good advice?

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找 a little a few little few

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Is Charlotte going to make coffee or tea?  
S: Coffee.

2 T: What does Jane think about that?  
S: She thinks (that) it's a good idea.

3 T: How much milk does Jane want?  
S: Just a little.

4 T: Does Jane want any sugar?  
S: Yes, she does.

5 T: How much sugar does she want?  
S: She wants one and a half teaspoonfuls.

6 T: Would Jane like some more coffee?  
S: Yes, she would.

7 T: What else would Jane like?  
S: She'd like a cigarette too.

8 T: Where does Jane look for cigarettes?  
S: In the box.

9 T: Are there any?  
S: No, there aren't. The box is empty.

10 T: What's Charlotte's advice?  
S: Eat more and smoke less.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Jane wants any milk in her coffee.  
S: Does Jane want any milk in her coffee?  
T: How much ...?  
S: How much milk does Jane want in her coffee?

2 T: Ask me if she wants two teaspoonfuls of sugar.  
S: Does she want two teaspoonfuls of sugar?  
T: How many ...?  
S: How many teaspoonfuls of sugar does she want?

3 T: Ask me if she would like some more.  
S: Would she like some more?  
T: Why...?  
S: Why would she like some more?

4 T: Ask me if there are any cigarettes in that box.  
S: Are there any cigarettes in that box?  
T: How many ...?  
S: How many cigarettes are there in that box?

5 T: Ask me if she will have a biscuit instead.  
S: Will she have a biscuit instead?  
T: What ...?  
S: What will she have instead?

### homework

绿皮书 第109课的写作练习：文章跟读至熟读成诵；  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**coffee**

- 1 I've got some coffee.  
2 I've got less than you have.  
3 I've got very little.

**books**

- 1 I've got some books.  
2 I've got fewer than you have.  
3 I've got very few.

**meat**

- 1 I've got some meat.  
2 I've got less than you have.  
3 I've got very little.

**money**

- 1 I've got some money.  
2 I've got less than you have.  
3 I've got very little.

**vegetables**

- 1 I've got some vegetables.  
2 I've got fewer than you have.  
3 I've got very few.

**biscuits**

- 1 I've got some biscuits.  
2 I've got fewer than you have.  
3 I've got very few.

**chocolate**

- 1 I've got some chocolate.  
2 I've got less than you have.  
3 I've got very little.

**presents**

- 1 I've got some presents.  
2 I've got fewer than you have.  
3 I've got very few.

**ink**

- 1 I've got some ink.  
2 I've got less than you have.  
3 I've got very little.

**homework**

绿皮书 第110课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

more most+ adj.  
多音节形容词，前加more, most表更多

**beautiful**

more beautiful

the most beautiful

She is more beautiful than her mom.

She is the most beautiful woman in  
her family.**as...as**expensive → as expensive as beautiful  
→ as beautiful asThe blue car is as clean as the red  
car.

....和... 相同

**less least + adj.**

多音节形容词，前加less, least表较少

beautiful

less beautiful

the least beautiful

expensive

less expensive

the least expensive

**as...as**He is as stupid as a donkey.  
She is as beautiful as an angel.  
He is as slow as a snail.  
Pregnant woman is as beautiful as a  
flower.**not as...as**

否定: not as adj. as ...不如...

The blue car is not as clean as the red  
car.

The woman is not as tall as the man.

The left dog is not as big as the right  
dog.The left man is not as thin as the right  
man.The left river is not as clean as the  
right river.**interesting**

Life of PI is interesting.

**less**

This movie is less interesting.

**the least**This movie is the least interesting  
movie of Li An i've ever seen.

/'mɒdəl/

## model n.

This is a car model.

My car model is bigger than yours.

My son wants to buy a car model.

I think that this car model is too expensive.

/ə'fɔ:d/

## afford v.

It's too expensive. I can't afford it.

It's cheap enough. We can afford that.

/dɪ'pəzɪt/

## deposit n.

[Story]: You can pay a deposit of thirty pounds.

Can I pay a deposit of thirty pounds?

He paid a deposit of thirty pounds.

Did he pay a deposit of thirty pounds?

/ɪn'stə:l'mənt/

## instalment

buy sth. on instalments.

He bought this car on instalments.

Did he buy this car on instalments?

Why did he buy this car on instalments?

/praɪs/

## price

Look at that price, it's too expensive.

We can't afford that.

/mɪlɪə'nɪər/

## millionaire

I think that he wants to be a millionaire.

Do you want to be a millionaire?

This millionaire is richer than that one.

## homework

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书 as...as

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:What does Mr. Frith think about the first television?  
S:He likes it very much.

2 T:Is it one of the cheaper models?  
S>No, it isn't.

3 T:Is there a more expensive model in the shop?  
S>No, there isn't.

4 T:What does Mrs. Frith think about the price?  
S>It's too expensive for them.

5 T:How much does the less expensive model cost?  
S>Three hundred pounds.

6 T:Is the less expensive model as good as the first one?  
S>No, it isn't.

7 T:How can Mr. Frith buy the model he wants?  
S>He can buy it on instalments.

8 T:Will the television be more expensive on instalments?  
S>Yes, it will.

9 T:How much will it cost?  
S>It'll cost £534.

10 T:Does Mrs. Frith think this is a good idea?  
S>Not really.

1 T:Ask me if the television costs a lot.  
S:Does the television cost a lot?

T:How much ...?

S:How much does the television cost?

2 T:Ask me if it's the most expensive model in the shop.

S:Is it the most expensive model in the shop?

T:Which ...?

S:Which is the most expensive model in the shop?

3 T:Ask me if Mr. Frith likes this model.

S:Does Mr. Frith like this model?

T:Why doesn't ...?

S:Why doesn't Mr. Frith like this model?

4 T:Ask me if he can pay thirty pounds as a deposit.

S:Can he pay thirty pounds as a deposit?

T:How much ...?

S:How much can he pay as a deposit?

5 T:Ask me if millionaires buy things on instalments.

S:Do millionaires buy things on instalments?

T:How ...?

S:How do millionaires buy things?

### homework

绿皮书 第111课的写作练习：文章跟读至熟读成诵；  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

# 112

## Practices

### apple

- 1 Is the red apple sweeter than the green one?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The red apple is as sweet as the green one.

### man woman

- 1 Is the man shorter than the woman?
- 2 No, he isn't.
- 3 The man is as short as the woman.

### television

- 1 Is the television on the left more expensive than the television on the right?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The television on the left is not as expensive as the television on the right.

### pencil

- 1 Is the red pencil blunter than the green one?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The red pencil is as blunt as the green one.

### **handbag**

- 1 Is the white handbag newer than the black one?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The white handbag is not as new as the black one.

### **policeman policewoman**

- 1 Is the policeman taller than the policewoman?
- 2 No, he isn't.
- 3 The policeman is as tall as the policewoman.

### **woman**

- 1 Is the woman on the left smarter than the woman on the right?
- 2 No, she isn't.
- 3 The woman on the left is not as smart as the woman on the right.

### **boy girl**

- 1 Is the boy older than the girl?
- 2 No, he isn't.
- 3 The boy is as old as the girl.

### **case**

- 1 Is the brown case lighter than the blue one?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The brown case is not as light as the blue one.

### **knife**

- 1 Is the white knife sharper than the black one?
- 2 No, it isn't.
- 3 The white knife is as sharp as the black one.

### **homework**

绿皮书 第112课的写作练习

本视频听力口语练习反复跟读

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

not & no  
not any/a.an=no+n.

not & no & none  
no + n.= none

I didn't see any cars in the street.  
I saw no cars in the street.

I haven't got any time.  
I've got no time.

I haven't got any money.  
I have got no money.

There aren't any books on the shelves.  
There are no books on the shelves.

Have you got any beer?  
We haven't got any beer.  
We've got no beer.  
We've got none.

There aren't any students.  
There are no students. There are none.

He's got no money.  
He's got no girlfriend.  
He's got no job.  
He's got no car.

He's got no house.  
He's got none.

## Words

### /kən'dʌktər/ **conductor**

This conductor is taller than that one.  
This conductor is the kindest guy I've ever seen.

### /feə/ **fare n.**

/tʃeɪndʒ/  
**change v.**  
I want my change.  
I can't change a ten pound note.  
Can you change a ten pound note?

### /nəʊt/ **note n.**

### /'pæsəndʒə/ **passenger n.**

This bus is full of young passengers.  
These passengers are the most interesting people I've ever seen.

### **get off**

Look, that little girl is getting off the bus.  
She got off the bus 5 minutes ago.  
Did she get off the bus 5 minutes ago?  
When did she get off the bus?

### /træmp/ **tramp**

Can we help that tramp?  
We can give him some food.  
This tramp is older than your dad.

### /ɪk'sept/ **except**

### **homework**

单词造句\*3；初级红皮书查找语法；请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

so neither

肯定: so+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

否定: neither+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

时态一致, 人称一致

I have a happy family. So do I.

I don't want to work. Neither do I.

### 活动

肯定: so+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

否定: neither+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

时态一致, 人称一致

I can swim.

I like ice cream.

I hate my boss.

I must make the bed everyday.

I saw my dad yesterday.

I am happy.

I was thin.

### 活动

肯定: so+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

否定: neither+助动词/情态动词/be+主语

时态一致, 人称一致

I didn't see my mom yesterday.

I can't swim.

I don't like car.

I can't cook.

I am not happy.

I don't hate you.

## Comprehension

1 T:Where does the man want to go?  
S:He wants to go to Trafalgar Square.

6 T:Does the first passenger have any small change?  
S:No, he doesn't.

2 T:What does he give the conductor for his fare?

S:He gives the conductor a ten-pound note.

7 T:Does the second passenger have any small change?  
S:No, he doesn't have any either.

3 T:Does the conductor have any small change?

S:No, he doesn't.

8 T:What does the conductor ask the man to do?

S:He asks the man to get off the bus.

4 T:Has the man got any small change?

S:No, he hasn't.

9 T:Does anyone have any small change?

S:Yes, the two tramps do.

5 T:What does the conductor say he will do?

S:He says he will ask some of the passengers.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the man wants to go to Trafalgar Square.

S:Does the man want to go to Trafalgar Square?

T:Where...?

S:Where does the man want to go?

2 T:Ask me if the conductor can change a ten-pound note.

S:Can the conductor change a ten-pound note?

T:Why can't...?

S:Why can't the conductor change a ten-pound note?

3 T:Ask me if the conductor will ask the passengers.

S:Will the conductor ask the passengers?

T:Who...?

S:Who will the conductor ask?

4 T :Ask me if the man must get off the bus.

S:Must the man get off the bus?

T:Why...?

S:Why must the man get off the bus?

5 T:Ask me if the tramps have got some small change.

S:Have the tramps got some small change?

T:Who...?

S:Who have got some small change?

### homework

绿皮书 第113课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

初级红皮书查找 So Neither

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**hungry**

- 1 I'm hungry.  
2 So am I.

**tired**

- 1 I'm not tired.  
2 Neither am I.

**coffee**

- 1 I want some coffee.  
2 So do I.

**tea**

- 1 I don't want any tea.  
2 Neither do I.

**party**

- 1 I was at the party last night.  
2 So was I.

**tired**

- 1 I wasn't tired this morning.  
2 Neither was I.

**swim**

- 1 I can swim very well.  
2 So can I.

**speak Chinese**

- 1 I can't speak Chinese.  
2 Neither can I.

**saw George**

- 1 I saw George last night.  
2 So did I.

**a new car**

- 1 I didn't buy a new car last year.  
2 Neither did I.

**cold**

- 1 I've got a cold.  
2 So have I.

**headache**

- 1 I haven't got a headache.  
2 Neither have I.

**homework**

绿皮书 第114课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

初级红皮书查 So Neither

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

|            |                  |          |           |
|------------|------------------|----------|-----------|
| every      | no               | any      | some      |
| everyone   | no one           | anyone   | someone   |
| everybody  | nobody           | anybody  | somebody  |
| everything | /'nʌθɪŋ/ nothing | anything | something |
| everywhere | nowhere          | anywhere | somewhere |

## Words

*/nɒk/***knock v.**

Someone is knocking at the door.

Who is knocking at the door?

Did you knock at the door?

*/'kwaɪət/***quiet adj.**

Be quiet.

*/ɪm'ɒsəbəl/***impossible adj.**

im+possible

Everything is possible.

Nothing is impossible.

*/ɪn'veɪlt/***invite v.**

They invited me to dinner.

Did they invite you to dinner?

Why did they invite you to dinner?

*/lə'meɪ'nɛd/***lemonade n.**

give me some lemonade.

This lemonade is the best I've ever tasted.

This lemonade is as good as that one.

*/dʒo:k/***joke v.**

She is joking.

Is she joking?

You can't joke about this.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法+知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Why does Jim think that there is no one at home?  
S:Because everything is very quiet.

2 T:Will Jim go away or will he knock again?  
S:He'll knock again.

3 T :Why does Helen think it is impossible that there's no one at home?  
S:Because Carol and Tom invited them to lunch.

4 T:What does Helen ask Jim to do?  
S:She asks Jim to look through the window.

5 T:Can Jim see anything?  
S:No, he can't.

6 T:Where do they find their friends?  
S:In the garden.

7 T:Why is everyone in the garden?  
S:Because everybody wants to have lunch out there.

8 T:What would Jim like to drink?  
S:He'd like a glass of beer.

9 T:Is there any beer left?  
S:Yes, there is.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Jim will knock at the door.  
S:Will Tim knock at the door?  
T:Who...?  
S:Who will knock at the door?

2 T:Ask me if Tom and Carol invited them to lunch.  
S:Did Tom and Carol invite them to lunch?  
T:Who...?  
S:Who invited them to lunch?

3 T:Ask me if everyone is in the garden.  
S:Is everyone in the garden?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where is everyone?

4 T:Ask me if Jim can have some lemonade to drink.  
S:Can Jim have some lemonade to drink?  
T:What...?  
S:What can Jim have to drink?

5 T:Ask if Jim wants any beer.  
S:Does Jim want any beer?  
T:What...?  
S:What does Jim want?

### homework

绿皮书 第115课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/ə'sli:p/***asleep adj.**

She is asleep.  
Everyone is asleep.

*/'glæsɪz/***glasses n.**

You are wearing your new glasses.  
I bought these new glasses last week.  
did/when/where...

**Practices****see**

- 1 Did you see anyone yesterday?  
2 No, I saw no one.

**buy**

- 1 Did you buy anything this morning?  
2 No, I bought nothing.

**hear**

- 1 Did you hear anything?  
2 No, I heard nothing.

**write**

- 1 Did you write to anyone yesterday?  
2 No, I wrote to no one.

**speak**

- 1 Did anyone speak to you?  
2 No, no one spoke to me.

**meet**

- 1 Did anyone meet you at the station?  
2 No, no one met me.

**go**

- 1 Did you go anywhere yesterday?  
2 No, I went nowhere.  
3 I didn't go anywhere.

**tell**

- 1 Did anybody tell you?  
2 No, nobody told me.

**homework**

绿皮书 第116课的写作练习

初级红皮书查找语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

过去进行时:  
was/were + doing

I was doing my homework at 8 o'clock last night.

We were swimming in the river, at 4 o'clock, yesterday afternoon.

Were you swimming...?

What were you doing?

定义：句子作时间状语

He was cooking a meal at 10 o'clock.

He was cooking a meal when he was listening to music.

When+was doing/did

While+was doing

**When+was doing/did**

**While+was doing**

1 Someone knocked at the door, when I was having lunch.

2 She was washing the dishes, when the telephone rang.

3 She was cooking the dinner, when I knocked at the door.

**When+was doing/did**

**While+was doing**

1 She was cooking the dinner, while I was watching TV.

2 She was cooking the dinner, while I was eating.

3 I was playing games, when my father was sleeping last night.

4 When I was driving to London, It rained heavily.

## Words

### /'daɪnɪŋ/ **dining room**

There are seven chairs in the dining room.

Look, they are having lunch in the dining room.

This dining room is big enough for us.

### /kɔɪn/ **coin n.**

I've got more coins than you have. L109

This is the most beautiful coin I've ever seen. L111

Do you have any coins?

I don't have any coins. = I have no coins. L113

### /məʊθ/ /'swəleəʊ/ **mouth n. swallow v.**

Don't swallow that.

She swallowed all the pills last night.

Did she swallow all the pills last night?  
why/who/when...

### /'tɔɪlɪt/ **toilet n.**

Where is the toilet?

Look! There is a toilet.

I cleaned the toilet last night.

She has been in the toilet for an hour.

## homework

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找重点语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:What was her husband doing when he dropped the coins?  
S:He was going into the dining room.

2 T:Where were the coins?  
S:They were everywhere.

3 T:Did they look for the coins?  
S:Yes, they did.

4 T:Could they find them all?  
S>No, they couldn't.

5 T:Who found some small coins on the floor?  
S>Their son, Tommy, did.

6 T:What were they doing when Tommy found the coins?  
S:They were having breakfast.

7 T:What did Tommy put in his mouth?  
S:Both coins.

8 T:Why was it too late for them to get the coins?  
S:Because Tommy had already swallowed them.

9 T:What was Tommy's mother doing when her husband phoned?  
S:She was doing the housework.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if he dropped some coins on the floor.  
S:Did he drop some coins on the floor?  
T:What...?  
S:What did he drop on the floor?

2 T:Ask me if they could find them all.  
S:Could they find them all?  
T:Why couldn't?  
S:Why couldn't they find them all?

3 T:Ask me if Tommy found two small coins on the floor.  
S:Did Tommy find two small coins on the floor?  
T:What...?  
S:What did Tommy find on the floor?

4 T :Ask me if he put them into his mouth.  
S:Did he put them into his mouth?  
T:Where...?  
S:Where did he put them?

5 T:Ask me if he has been to the toilet.  
S:Has he been to the toilet?  
T:How many times...?  
S:How many times has he been to the toilet?

## homework

绿皮书 第117课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**having a bath**

- 1 What were you doing when he arrived?  
 2 I was having a bath.  
 3 I was having a bath when he arrived.

**washing the dishes**

- 1 What was Mary doing when the telephone rang?  
 2 She was washing the dishes.  
 3 She was washing the dishes when the telephone rang.

**making the bed**

- 1 What was your mother doing when the postman came?  
 2 She was making the bed.  
 3 She was making the bed when the postman came.

**telephoning my sister**

- 1 What were you doing when it happened?  
 2 I was telephoning my sister.  
 3 I was telephoning my sister when it happened.

**reading**

- 1 What were the children doing when the milk boiled over?  
 2 They were reading  
 3 They were reading when the milk boiled over.

**making tea**

- 1 What were you doing when the baby broke that cup?  
 2 I was making tea.  
 3 I was making tea when the baby broke that cup.

**listening to the stereo**

- 1 What were you doing when your mother came into the room?  
 2 I was listening to the stereo.  
 3 I was listening to the stereo when my mother came into the room.

**working in the garden**

- 1 What was your father doing when he heard the news?  
 2 He was working in the garden.  
 3 He was working in the garden when he heard the news.

**cleaning her shoes**

- 1 What was your sister doing when George knocked at the door?  
 2 She was cleaning her shoes.  
 3 She was cleaning her shoes when George knocked at the door.

**doing his homework**

- 1 What was your son doing when his friends arrived?  
 2 He was doing his homework.  
 3 He was doing his homework when his friends arrived.

**homework**

绿皮书 第118课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

反复跟读本课听力口语练习

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

过去完成时：  
 强调过去某一动作发生在另一动  
 作或状态之前。(过去的过去)

had + done

had + not + done

Had(提句首)+主语+其他

经常与after before 连用

After A, B. = B after A / Before B, A. = A before B.

1 看完电视之后，我就去看书了。

2 After I had seen the film, I read the book.

3 I read the book after I had seen the film.

1 我把旧车卖了，然后买了辆新的。

2 After I had sold the old car, I bought a new one.

3 I bought a new one after I had sold the old car.

1 下车之后他向出租车司机告别。

2 After he had got out of the car, he said goodbye to the taxi driver.

1 Before they ate the dinner, they had washed their hands.

2 They had washed their hands before they ate the dinner.

1 Before you knew it, I had already run far away.

2 I had already run far away before you knew it.

1 Before we realized it, it had been too late.

## Words

/'sto:ri/

### story n.

tell a story

My father told us a story last night.

My father tell us a story every night.

Their father is telling them a story now.

/θi:f/

### thief-thieves n.

That thief was looking at the picture in the living room when someone knocked at the door. L117

This thief is taller than that one. L108

/'entər/

### enter v.

When the woman was entering the room, she dropped everything on the floor. L117

She entered the room 2 hours ago.

did/when/who...

/dɑ:k/

### dark adj.

1 It's dark outside. Be careful.

2 This room is darker than that one.

3 This is the darkest night I've ever seen.

4 It's dark enough to see the stars in the sky.

/tɔ:tʃ/

### torch n.

Can you give me a torch, please?  
We must buy a new torch tomorrow.  
I have had this torch for 10 years. L89

/vɔ:s/

### voice n.

hear a voice  
Did you hear a voice?  
Can you hear a voice?

/'pærət/

### parrot n.

This parrot is too old to fly.  
Everybody likes this parrot.  
My son wants to buy a parrot.

### homework

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查过去完成时

请给自己讲解一遍今天的 核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:How long ago did this story happen?  
S:It happened a year ago.

2 T:What was George doing when two thieves climbed into his kitchen?  
S:He was reading in bed.

3 T:Where did they go after they had entered the house?  
S:They went into the dining room.

4 T:What kind of light did they have with them?  
S:They had a torch.

5 T:What did they hear suddenly?  
S:They heard a voice behind them.

6 T:What did the thieves do?  
S:They dropped the torch and ran away. as quickly as they could.

7 T:What could George see when he came downstairs?  
S:He couldn't see anyone.

8 T:Who had called out in the dark?  
S:George's parrot, Henry, had.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if it happened to a friend of mine.

S:Did it happen to a friend of yours?

T:What...?

S:What happened to a friend of yours?

4 T:Ask me if they heard a voice behind them.

S:Did they hear a voice behind them?

T:What...?

S:What did they hear behind them?

2 T:Ask me if George was reading in bed.

S:Was George reading in bed?

T:When...?

S:When was George reading in bed?

5 T:Ask me if George came downstairs.

S:Did George come downstairs?

T:When...?

S:When did George come downstairs?

3 T:Ask me if the thieves went into the dining room.

S:Did the thieves go into the dining room?

T:Where...?

S:Where did the thieves go?

### homework

绿皮书 第119课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的知识点

1 Did you read the book?  
2 Yes, but I saw the film first.  
3 I read the book after I had seen the film.

1 Did you go to the doctor?  
2 Yes, but I made an appointment first.  
3 I went to the doctor after I had made an appointment.

1 Did the boss leave the office?  
2 Yes, but he finished his work first.  
3 He left the office after he had finished his work.

1 Did your wife go out?  
2 Yes, but she finished the housework first.  
3 She went out after she had finished the housework.

1 Did your teacher give you your exercise book?  
2 Yes, but he corrected it first.  
3 He gave me my exercise book after he had corrected it.

1 Did your sister go on holiday?  
2 Yes, but she took the examination first.  
3 She went on holiday after she had taken the examination.

1 Did you buy a new car?  
2 Yes, but I sold my old one first.  
3 I bought a new car after I had sold my old one.

1 Did your mother sweep the floor?  
2 Yes, but she dusted the cupboard first.  
3 She swept the floor after she had dusted the cupboard.

1 Did you drink the milk?  
2 Yes, but I boiled it first.  
3 I drank the milk after I had boiled it.

1 Did the children go to bed?  
2 Yes, but they had a bath first.  
3 The children went to bed after they had had a bath.

### homework

绿皮书 第120课的写作练习  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点  
反复跟读本视频中例句

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/'kʌstəmə/***customer**

Customer Services

The customer is always right.

This customer is rich enough to buy everything in the shop.

*/fə'get/ /fə'got/ /fə'gɔ:tən/***forget - forgot - forgotten**

Oh, No. I forgot to take my pills.

I forgot to take an umbrella with me.

I forgot to cook dinner for him.

*/'mænɪdʒə/***manager n.**

He is the hotel manager.

The hotel manager cleaned every room yesterday.

The manager has lived in New York for 2 years. L89

*/sɜ:v/***serve v.**

After he had served us some food, he went back home.

I served him an hour ago.

Did you serve him an hour ago?

when/why/who...

*/'kaʊntə/***counter n.**

The lady is standing behind the counter.

After she had cleaned the counter, she closed the store. L119

This counter is higher than the old one.

*/'rekəgnائز/***recognize v.**

I can recognize him.

Can you recognize him?

Can't you recognize him? L67

You can recognize him, can't you? L103

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Grammar**

定语从句

宾语从句 L99

定语&amp;位置

时间状语从句 L117

甜的苹果

定语从句：一个句子做定语 (adj.)

Sweet apple

黃的香蕉 Yellow banana

定语从句修饰【人】用who/whom/that  
他就是昨天遇到我的那个人。

定语&amp;位置

He is the man.

桌子上的面包。

The man met me yesterday.

The bread on the table

He is the man who met me yesterday.

我旁边的家伙

The guy next to me

单词在前，短语在后

他就是昨天我遇到的那个人。

He is the man.

I met the man yesterday.

He is the man who (whom) I met yesterday.

定语从句修饰【人】用who/whom/that

他就是昨天给我打电话的那个朋友。

He is the friend.

The friend called me yesterday.

He is the friend who/that called me yesterday.

定语从句修饰【人】用who/whom/that

我认识很多在北京居住的人。

I know a lot of people.

They live in Beijing.

I know a lot of people who live in Beijing.

定语从句修饰【人】用who/whom/that

我喜欢正在听音乐的那个漂亮姑娘。

I like that beautiful girl.

She is listening to music.

I like that beautiful girl who is listening to music.

定语从句修饰【物】用which/that

这就是他寄给我的信。

This is the letter.

He sent me the letter.

This is the letter which/that he sent me.

定语从句修饰【物】用which/that

这些就是我昨天买的那些书。

These are the books.

I bought them yesterday.

These are the books which/that I bought yesterday.

定语从句修饰【物】用which/that

我想要那个旁边有把小勺的冰激凌!

I want that ice cream.

The ice cream is near the spoon.

I want that ice cream which is near the spoon.

定语从句修饰谁，紧跟谁。

住在我旁边的男人很可爱。

The man is cute.

He lives next to me.

The man is cute who lives next to me.

The man who lives next to me is cute.

定语从句修饰谁，紧跟谁。

有两大耳朵的人很可爱。

The man is cute .

He has two big ears.

The man who has two big ears is cute.

定语从句修饰谁，紧跟谁。

站在那儿的那个男人是我哥哥!

The man is my brother.

The man is standing there.

The man who is standing there is my brother.

定语从句修饰谁，紧跟谁。

我昨晚看的那个电影好无聊!

The movie is boring.

I saw that movie last night.

The movie which I saw last night is boring.

### homework

初级红皮书查找定语从句；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T:Why had the customer come back to the shop?  
S:Because he had forgotten his books.

2 T:When had he bought the two dictionaries?  
S:Half an hour earlier.

3 T:Could he recognize the lady who served him?  
S:Yes, he could.

4 T:Could he see the books which he had bought?  
S:Yes, he could.

5 T:Where were the books?  
S:They were on the counter.

6 T :Did Caroline remember the person who had bought the dictionaries?  
S>No, she didn't.

7 T:How did she recognize him as the man whom she had served?  
S:She recognized him when he put his hat on.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the man bought two dictionaries.  
S:Did the man buy two dictionaries?  
T:What...?  
S:What did the man buy?

2 T:Ask me if he forgot to take them with him.  
S:Did he forget to take them with him?  
T:Why...?  
S:Why did he forget to take them with him?

3 T:Ask me if Caroline served him.  
S:Did Caroline serve him?  
T:Who...?  
S:Who served him?

4 T:Ask me if She can remember him.  
S:Can she remember him?  
T:Why can't...?  
S:Why can't she remember him?

5 T:Ask me if he was wearing a hat.  
S:Was he wearing a hat?  
T:What...?  
S:What was he wearing?

### homework

绿皮书 第121课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**mechanic**

- 1 Isn't he the mechanic?  
 2 Didn't he repair your car?  
 3 Yes, he's the mechanic who repaired my car.

**thieves**

- 1 Aren't they the thieves?  
 2 Didn't the police catch them?  
 3 Yes, they're the thieves whom the police caught.

**car**

- 1 Isn't that the car?  
 2 Didn't you sell it last year?  
 3 Yes, that's the car which I sold last year.

**children**

- 1 Aren't they the children?  
 2 Don't they live next door?  
 3 Yes, they're the children who live next door.

**porter**

- 1 Isn't that the porter?  
 2 Didn't he carry your suitcase?  
 3 Yes, he's the porter who carried my suitcase.

**windows**

- 1 Aren't they the windows?  
 2 Didn't the children break them yesterday?  
 3 Yes, they're the Windows which the Children broke yesterday.

**coin**

- 1 Isn't that the coin?  
 2 Didn't you find it in the garden?  
 3 Yes, that's the coin which I found in the garden.

**woman**

- 1 Isn't she the woman?  
 2 Didn't you drive her to London?  
 3 Yes, she's the woman whom I drove to London.

**books**

- 1 Aren't these the books?  
 2 Didn't you buy them last week?  
 3 Yes, they're the books which I bought last week.

**people**

- 1 Aren't they the people?  
 2 Didn't you invite them to your party?  
 3 Yes, they're the people whom I invited to my party.

**homework**

绿皮书 第122课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核知识点

反复跟读本视频例句

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

*/dʒʊərɪŋ/ /trɪp/***during trip n.**

I met him during my trip to New York.

did/when/who...

We didn't speak during the meal.

Why didn't you speak during the meal?

*/trævəl/***travel v.**

I would like to travel there. L107

I travelled with my girlfriend last summer.

did/when/where/who...

*/'ɒfə/ /dʒob/***offer v. job**

offer sb. a job

She offered me a job last year.

did/when/who...

offer n.

*/groʊ/ /gruːl/ /greʊn/ /briːd/***grow - grew - grown v. beard**

I grew a beard during my trip.

I grow some vegetables every summer.

did/do/when...

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:What photographs were these?  
S:They were the ones Mike took during his trip to Australia.

2 T:Whom did Scott ask about?  
S:He asked about some people Mike met during the trip.

3 T:What was in the next photograph?  
S:It was the ship Mike travelled on.

4 T:Who was the man Mike had told Scott about?  
S:He was the one who offered Mike a job in Australia.

5 T:Who was the man with the beard?  
S:It was Mike(himself).

6 T:Why had he shaved it off when he came home?  
S:Because his wife didn't like it.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Mike took this photograph.  
S:Did Mike take this photograph?  
T:When...?  
S:When did Mike take this photograph?

2 T:Ask me if Mike met these people during the trip.  
S:Did Mike meet these people during the trip?  
T:Who(m)...?  
S:Who(or Whom)did Mike meet during the trip?

3 T:Ask me if he travelled on a beautiful ship.  
S:Did he travel on a beautiful ship?  
T:What kind of...?  
S:What kind of ship did he travel on?

4 T:Ask me if the man offered him a job in Australia.  
S:Did the man offer him a job in Australia?  
T:Who...?  
S:Who offered him a job in Australia?

5 T:Ask me if he shaved off his beard.  
S:Did he shave off his beard?  
T:Why...?  
S:Why did he shave off his beard?

### homework

绿皮书 第123课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

练习感叹句

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

*/'kɪtən/***kitten**

Do you like kitten?

This is the kitten that I told you about.

When they were washing the kitten, someone knocked at the door.

**Practices****test**

1 Isn't this the test?

2 Didn't you speak to me about it?

3 Yes, this is the test I spoke to you about.

**person**

1 Isn't that the person?

2 Didn't you speak to him?

3 Yes, that's the person I spoke to.

**girl**

1 Isn't she the girl?

2 Didn't you ask me about her?

3 Yes, she's the girl I asked you about.

**photographs**

1 Aren't these the photographs?

2 Didn't you look at them?

3 Yes, these are the photographs I looked at.

**actors**

1 Aren't they the actors?

2 Didn't you read about them?

3 Yes, they're the actors I read about.

**ship**

1 Isn't that the ship?

2 Didn't you travel on it?

3 Yes, that's the ship I travelled on.

**city**

1 Isn't that the city?

2 Didn't your friends come from there?

3 Yes, that's the city my friends came from.

**shop**

1 Isn't that the shop?

2 Didn't you get your hat from there?

3 Yes, that's the shop I got my hat from.

**chair**

1 Isn't that the chair?

2 Didn't you sit on it?

3 Yes, that's the chair I sat on.

**homework**

绿皮书 第124课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

反复跟读本视频联系

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

have to 一般现在时  
含义：必须 / 不得不

### 一般现在时

I have to leave now.

I don't have to leave now.

Do you have to leave now?

Why do you have to leave now?

### 三单

She has to leave now.

She doesn't have to leave now.

Does she have to leave now?

Why does she have to leave now?

### have to

1 She has to work from 9 to 5.

2 She doesn't have work from 9 to 5.

3 Does she have to work from 9 to 5?

### have to

1 They have to go to New York.

2 They don't have to go to New York.

3 Do they have to go to New York?

4 How often do they have to go to New York?

have to 一般将来时

含义：必须 / 不得不

## 一般将来时

I have lost my key, so I will have to stay at home this afternoon.

I won't have to stay at home this afternoon.

Will you have to stay at home this afternoon.

When will you have to stay at home?

### have to

1 He will have to leave tonight.

2 He won't have to leave tonight.

3 Will he have to leave tonight?

4 When will he have to leave?

have to 一般过去时

含义：必须 / 不得不

## 一般过去时

I had to work for my family when I was 16.

I didn't have to work for my family.

Did you have to work for your family?

Why did you have to work for your family?

### have to

1 She had to get up very early this morning.

2 She didn't have to get up very early this morning. 3 Did she have to get up very early this morning?

**must 必须**

说话人的主观看法

I must go now. (主观意愿)

**have to 不得不**

客观需要 (如章程或他人命令)

I have to go now. (客观情况)

This is a terrible party, we really must go home. This is a lovely place, but I have to go home because of my daughter.

**have to VS must****must 必须；主观****have to 不得不；客观**

I must stop smoking.

I have to stop smoking.

## Words

*/'wɔ:tər/***water v.**

My father waters the garden everyday.  
My mom watered the flowers last night.  
The man who is watering the garden is my brother.

*/'terəblɪ/ /draɪ/***terribly adv. dry adj.**

I watered the garden yesterday, but it's terribly dry right now.  
Why is it terribly dry this summer?

*/'nju:səns/***nuisance**

What a nuisance!  
She is a nuisance.

*/mi:n/ /ment/***mean - meant - meant v.**

It means we can't help him.  
Does it mean we can't help him?  
What does it mean?

*/sə'prɔɪz/***surprise n.**

What do you want?  
Surprise me.  
[Story]: That was a pleasant surprise.  
Why was that a pleasant surprise?

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

- 1 T:What does Susan want Peter to do?  
S:She wants him to come in and have some tea.
- 2 T:Why does he say he can't come in yet?  
S: Because he must water the garden first.
- 3 T:Does he have to water it now?  
S:Yes, he does.
- 4 T:Why does Peter have to water the garden?  
S:Because it is terribly dry.
- 5 T:What was the weather like last summer?  
S:It was dry then too.
- 6 T:How often did Peter have to water the garden last summer?  
S:He had to water it every day.
- 7 T:What can Susan see when she looks out of the window?  
S:Rain.
- 8 T:Does Peter need to water the garden?  
S>No. he doesn't.

## Asking questions

- 1 T:Ask me if Peter must water the garden.  
S:Must Peter water the garden?  
T:What...do?  
S:What must Peter do?
- 2 T:Ask me if he has to water it now.  
S:Does he have to water it now?  
T:What ..do?  
S:What does he have to do now?
- 3 T:Ask me if he had to water the garden every day last summer.  
S:Did he have to water the garden every day last summer?  
T:When...?  
S:When did he have to water the garden every day?
- 4 T:Ask me if this means he doesn't have to water the garden.  
S:Does this mean he doesn't have to water the garden?  
T:What...?  
S:What does this mean?
- 5 T:Ask me if he can have tea instead.  
S:Can he have tea instead?  
T:What...do?  
S:What can he do instead?

### homework

绿皮书 第125课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

/ɪ'mi:dɪetli/

### immediately

We must leave immediately.

Do you have to leave immediately?

After they ate the dinner, they left the house immediately. L119

## Practices

### leave

1 I must leave now. What about you?

2 I have to leave, too.

### get up early

1 I don't have to get up early tomorrow.

What about you?

2 I don't need to get up early, either.

### change some money

1 Tom must change some money.

What about Mary?

2 She has to change some money, too.

### drive to London

1 Mary doesn't have to drive to London tomorrow. What about Tim?

2 He doesn't need to drive to London, either.

### go by air

1 I must go by air. What about you?

2 I have to go by air, too.

### meet her at the station

1 I don't have to meet her at the station.

What about you?

2 I don't need to meet her at the station, either.

### be there early

1 Tom doesn't have to be there early.

What about Alice?

2 She doesn't need to be there early, either.

### decide immediately

1 Alan must decide immediately.

What about George?

2 He has to decide immediately, too.

### take a taxi

1 I don't have to take a taxi.

What about you?

2 I don't need to take a taxi, either.

### catch that bus

1 I must catch that bus.

What about you?

2 I have to catch that bus, too.

### homework

绿皮书 第126课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**must 表推测**

确信度高/对现在的肯定推测：一定是

must be adj. n.

must be doing

You must be Leo.

He must be your father.

They must be drinking tea.

**can't 表推测**

确信度高/对现在的否定推测：一定不是

can't be adj. n.

can't be doing

You can't be Leo.

He can't be your father.

They can't be drinking tea.

**in class**

1 Why isn't John in class?

2 He must be sick.

3 He can't be late.

**must be / can't be**

1 You must be 25.

2 I am 40.

3 No, I can't believe it. You can't be 40.

**restaurant**

1 That restaurant must be very good.

It is always full of people.

2 That restaurant can't be very good.

It is always empty.

**ill**

1 She can't be ill.

2 She must be tired.

**dancer**

1 She can't be a doctor.

2 She must be a dancer.

**sleeping**

1 He must be sleeping.

2 He can't be reading.

**knock at the door**

1 Someone is knocking at the door.

2 It can't be your father. He won't be back until six.

3 It must be the postman.

**have lunch**

1 Where is Leo?

2 He must be having lunch.

3 He can't be sleeping at home.

**must 必须 & 一定**

He must drink a lot of milk.

/'feɪməs/ /'æktrɪs/  
**famous adj. actress n.**

She is a famous actress.

The famous actress who you saw last night is my sister.

When the famous actress was having a bath, someone knocked at the door.

/'æktər/  
**actor n.**

The actor who you met yesterday is my brother.

This is the best actor I've ever seen. L111

The actor had to get up very early this morning.

L125

did/when/why/who...

/ri:d/ /red/  
**read - read - read**

Can't you read the sign? It says "No Parking".

I read the actress was here last night. L99

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Kate is with Liz, isn't she?

S:Yes, she is.

2 T:Can Liz recognize Karen Marsh?

S:Yes, she can.

3 T:Who is Karen Marsh?

S:She is a famous actress.

4 T:Who is the man beside Karen Marsh?

S:That's Conrad Reeves.

5 T:Is he Karen Marsh's third or fourth husband?

S:Liz thinks he must be her fourth or fifth.

6 T:How old does Liz think Karen Marsh is?

S:She thinks she must be at least forty.

7 T:Why does Liz say Karen Marsh must be at least forty?

S:Because Karen Marsh was a famous actress when Liz was still at school.

8 T:Does Kate think that was a long time ago?

S:Yes, she does.

9 T:How old is Liz now?

S:She says she is not more than twenty-nine.

1 T:Ask me if Liz recognized Karen Marsh

S:Did Liz recognize Karen Marsh?

T:How...?

S:How did Liz recognize Karen Marsh?

2 T:Ask me if Karen Marsh has had a lot of husbands.

S:Has Karen Marsh had a lot of husbands?

T:How many...?

S:How many husbands has Karen Marsh had?

3 T:Ask me if Conrad is her fifth husband.

S:Is Conrad her fifth husband?

T:Which...?

S:Which husband is Conrad?

4 T:Ask me if Karen must be forty.

S:Must Karen be forty?

T:How old...?

S:How old must Karen be?

5 T:Ask me if Liz is twenty-nine.

S:Is Liz twenty-nine?

T:How old...?

S:How old is Liz?

### homework

绿皮书 第127课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**can't/must + v.**

- 1 Is he a doctor or a dentist?
- 2 He can't be a doctor.
- 3 He must be a dentist.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Is she Danish or Norwegian?
- 2 She can't be Danish.
- 3 She must be Norwegian.

**can't/must + be + v.ing**

- 1 Are they listening to the stereo or watching television?
- 2 They can't be listening to the stereo.
- 3 They must be watching television.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Is it the 1st or the 2nd today?
- 2 It can't be the 1st.
- 3 It must be the 2nd.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Are they Austrian or German?
- 2 They can't be Austrian.
- 3 They must be German.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Is she 32 or 30?
- 2 She can't be 32.
- 3 She must be 30.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Is it cheap or expensive?
- 2 It can't be cheap.
- 3 It must be expensive.

**can't/must + be+ v.ing**

- 1 Is he shaving or having a bath?
- 2 He can't be shaving.
- 3 He must be having a bath.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Is he the oldest or the youngest in the family?
- 2 He can't be the oldest.
- 3 He must be the youngest.

**can't/must be adj./n.**

- 1 Are they mechanics or engineers?
- 2 They can't be mechanics.
- 3 They must be engineers.

**homework**

绿皮书 第128课的写作练习

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

must can't 表推测  
确信度高/对过去的肯定推测：当时一定是

must have been adj./n.  
 must have done  
 must have been doing  
 I must have been crazy.  
 He must have been tired.  
 They must have been having a party.

must can't 表推测  
确信度高/对过去的肯定推测：当时一定不是

can't have been adj./n.  
 can't have done  
 can't have been doing  
 She can't have been ill.  
 They can't have been having dinner.

**must have been**  
**can't have been**  
 1 He can't have been 30.  
 2 He must have been 22.

**must have been**  
**can't have been**  
 1 You can't have been on the bus.  
 2 You must have been on the bus.

**must have been**  
**can't have been**  
 1 He must have been at school.  
 2 He can't have been at the restaurant.

**must have been doing**  
**can't have been doing**  
 1 She didn't hear the phone.  
 2 She must have been sleeping.  
 3 She can't have been cooking.

**must have been**  
**can't have been**  
 1 The phone rang but I didn't hear it.  
 2 I must have been asleep.  
 3 It's 7 in the evening. You can't have been asleep.

*/weɪv/***wave v.**

1 wave to sb.

Look, they are waving to you.

The policeman waved to you.

Did the policeman wave to you?

why/who/when...

*/træk/ /reɪs/***track n. race**

My brother is driving a car on the race track.

They must be cleaning the race track now.

The race track which they cleaned yesterday is full of bottles now.

*/maɪl/***mile**

The railway station is 4 miles away.

She is driving at seventy miles an hour.

He must be driving at fifty miles an hour.

*/əʊ'vee'teɪk/ /əʊ'vee'tu:k/ /'tɜ:kən/***overtake - overtook - overtaken**

The white car overtook the red one a minute ago.

Did the white car overtake the red one a minute ago?

when/how long ago

*/spɪ:d/ /'lɪmɪt/***speed limit**

He can't have seen the speed limit.

She saw the speed limit.

Did she see the speed limit?

who/what...

*/drɪ:m/***dream v.**

She waved to you, but you didn't see her. You must have been dreaming.

I dreamed about you last night.

She dreamed about some bad things last night.

*/saɪn/***sign n.**

The sign which they put up yesterday was not there this morning.

She must be cleaning the sign right now.

When he was cleaning the sign on the street yesterday, I waved to him.

*/'laɪsəns/***driving license**

I had to give police my driving license yesterday.

Did you have to give police your driving license yesterday?

why/when/who...

*/tʃɑ:dʒ/***charge v.**

The police will charge you this time.

The police won't charge you this time.

Will the police charge me this time?

why won't/who...

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Who is waving to Ann and Gary?  
S:The policeman is.

2 T:Why is the policeman waving?  
S:Because he wants Gary to stop.

3 T:How fast must Gary have been driving?  
S:He must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.

4 T:Why does the policeman say so?  
S:Because he was driving at eighty when he overtook Gary.

5 T:Why didn't Gary see the speed limit?  
S:He must have been dreaming.

6 T:Does Ann think Gary was dreaming?  
S>No, she doesn't.

7 T:What was Ann doing?  
S:She was telling Gary to drive slowly.

8 T:What does the policeman ask Gary for?  
S:He asks to see Gary's driving licence.

9 T:Will the policeman charge Gary this time?  
S>No, he won't.

10 T:What does Ann always tell Gary?  
S:She always tells Gary to drive slowly.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if the policeman wants Gary to stop.  
S:Does the policeman want Gary to stop?  
T:What...do?  
S:What does the policeman want Gary to do?

2 T:Ask me if he must have been driving at seventy miles an hour.  
S:Must he have been driving at seventy miles an hour?  
T:How fast...?  
S:How fast must he have been driving?

3 T:Ask me if Gary saw the speed limit.  
S:Did Gary see the speed limit?  
T:Why didn't...?  
S:Why didn't Gary see the speed limit?

4 T:Ask me if the policeman will charge him.  
S:Will the policeman charge him?  
T:Why won't...?  
S:Why won't the policeman charge him?

5 T:Ask me if Ann always tells Gary to drive slowly.  
S:Does Ann always tell Gary to drive slowly?  
T:What...?  
S:What does Ann always tell Gary?

### homework

绿皮书 第129课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**bus driver**

- 1 Was he a conductor or a bus driver?
- 2 He can't have been a conductor.
- 3 He must have been a bus driver.

**Japanese**

- 1 Was she Chinese or Japanese?
- 2 She can't have been Chinese.
- 3 She must have been Japanese.

**watching television**

- 1 Were they listening to the stereo or watching television?
- 2 They can't have been listening to the stereo.
- 3 They must have been watching television.

**25th**

- 1 Was it the 24th or the 25th yesterday?
- 2 It can't have been the 24th.
- 3 It must have been the 25th.

**American**

- 1 Were they English or American?
- 2 They can't have been English.
- 3 They must have been American.

**blunt**

- 1 Was your pencil sharp or blunt?
- 2 It can't have been sharp.
- 3 It must have been blunt.

**sweeping the floor**

- 1 Was she dusting the table or sweeping the floor?
- 2 She can't have been dusting the table.
- 3 She must have been sweeping the floor.

**youngest**

- 1 Was he the oldest or the youngest in the family?
- 2 He can't have been the oldest.
- 3 He must have been the youngest.

**25**

- 1 Was she 20 or 25?
- 2 She can't have been 20.
- 3 She must have been 25.

**engineers**

- 1 Were they mechanics or engineers?
- 2 They can't have been mechanics.
- 3 They must have been engineers.

**homework**

绿皮书 第130课的写作练习

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

may might 表推测  
确信度低/对现在的肯定推测：可能是

may/might be adj./n.

may/might do

may/might be doing

否定: may/might + not

**may be**

- 1 Where is she from?
- 2 She may be from China.
- 3 She may be from Korea.
- 4 She may be from Japan.
- 5 She must be from Japan.
- 6 She is from Japan.

**may be doing**

- 1 What is he doing?
- 2 He may be eating.
- 3 He may be drinking.
- 4 He may be cooking.
- 5 He must be drinking.
- 6 He is reading.

may might 表推测  
确信度低/对过去的肯定推测：当时可能是

may/might have been adj./n.

may/might have done

may/might have been doing

否定: may/might + not

**may/might have been adj./n.**

- 1 What was his job? I don't know.
- 2 He may have been a doctor.
- 3 He may have been a teacher.
- 4 He may have been a bus driver.

**may/might have been doing**

- 1 What was he doing?
- 2 He may have been repairing his car.
- 3 He may have been reading a book.
- 4 He may have been having dinner.

/i:dʒɪpt/

## Egypt n.

They went to Egypt last week.

did/when/where/who...

The man who you met in Egypt bought himself a new car. L121

When he was traveling in Egypt, he met his future wife. L117

/ə'b्रɔ:d/

## abroad

go abroad/study abroad/live abroad

He has lived abroad for 15 years. L89

They went abroad last winter.

did/when/where...

/'wʌri/

## worry v.

worry about sb./sth.

He worries about his job every day.

does/why/how often/what...

Your mom worried about you last night.

## homework

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Where does Gary think they may spend their holidays?

S:They may go abroad.

2 T:Where does Gary's wife want to go?

S:She wants to go to Egypt.

3 T:Would Gary like to go there too?

S:Yes, he would.

4 T:Have they made up their minds yet?

S>No, they haven't.

5 T:How does Gary think they will travel?

S:He thinks they may travel by sea.

6 T:What is Martin sure of?

S:He is sure that Gary and his wife will enjoy themselves.

7 T:Why does Gary say that they might not go anywhere?

S:Because his wife always worries too much.

8 T:What problem do they have every year?

S:They don't know who is going to look after everything for them.

1 T:Ask me if Gary's wife wants to go to Egypt.

S:Does Gary's wife want to go to Egypt?

T:Where...?

S:Where does Gary's wife want to go?

2 T:Ask me if they can't make up their minds.

S:Can't they make up their minds?

T:Why...?

S:Why can't they make up their minds?

3 T:Ask me if they may travel by sea.

S:May they travel by sea?

T:How...?

S:How may they travel?

4 T:Ask me if it takes a long time.

S:Does it take a long time?

T:How long...?

S:How long does it take?

5 T:Ask me if Ann worries a lot.

S:Does Ann worry a lot?

T:Why...?

S:Why does Ann worry a lot?

### homework

绿皮书 第131课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**may be**

- 1 Do you think he's in his room?  
2 I'm not sure. He may be in his room.

**may have been v.ing**

- 1 Do you think they were reading?  
2 I'm not sure. They may have been reading.

**may have been adj.**

- 1 Do you think they were in the garden?  
2 I'm not sure. They may have been in the garden.

**may be adj.**

- 1 Do you think this bread is fresh ?  
2 I'm not sure. It may be fresh.

**may have been adj.**

- 1 Do you think she was Danish?  
2 I'm not sure. She may have been Danish.

**may have been v.ing**

- 1 Do you think he was repairing the car?  
2 I'm not sure. He may have been repairing the car.

**may be v.ing**

- 1 Do you think they are playing in the garden?  
2 I'm not sure. They may be playing in the garden.

**may+v.**

- 1 Do you think they will offer you a job?  
2 I'm not sure. They may offer me a job.

**may be**

- 1 Do you think she's only 29?  
2 I'm not sure. She may be only 29.

**may have been adj.**

- 1 Do you think my answer was right?  
2 I'm not sure. It may have been right.

**homework**

绿皮书 第132课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

**直接引语&间接引语**

参考回顾：L99/101

主句：一般过去时

直接引语：一般现在时 am/is/are/do/does

间接引语：一般过去时 was/were/did

I feel tired.

What did she say?

she said that she felt tired.

### tired

1 I am tired.

2 What did he say?

3 He said that he was tired.

### interesting

1 The book is interesting.

2 What did she say?

3 She said that the book was interesting.

参考回顾：L99/101

主句：一般过去时

直接引语：现在进行时 am/is/are+doing

间接引语：过去进行时 was/were+doing

I am waiting for the taxi.

What did she tell you?

She told me that she was waiting for the taxi.

### dinner

1 We are having dinner.

2 What did they tell you?

3 They told me that they were having dinner.

### working

1 I am working.

2 What did he tell you?

3 He told me that he was working.

参考回顾: L99/101  
主句: 一般过去时  
直接引语: 现在完成时 have+done /  
一般过去时 was/were/did  
间接引语: 过去完成时 had+done

I have finished my homework.  
What did she say?  
She said that she had finished her homework.

### lost my key

- 1 I've lost my key.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said that he had lost his key.

### homework

- 1 I did my homework well.
- 2 What did she say?
- 3 She said that she had done her homework well.

参考回顾: L99/101  
主句: 一般过去时  
直接引语: 一般将来时 am/is/are+going to do  
间接引语: 过去将来时 was/were going to do

I'm going to take a bath.  
What did she say?  
She said she was going to take a bath.

### sleep

- 1 I'm going to sleep.
- 2 What did he tell you?
- 3 He told me that he was going to sleep.

*/rɪ'pɔ:tə/***reporter n.**

She is the best reporter I've ever seen. L111  
 The reporter who was on TV last night went abroad this morning. L121  
 After the reporter got out of the building, it began to rain. L119

*/sen'seifənəl/***sensational adj.**

This is the most sensational news I've ever heard. L111  
 This may be the most sensational news I've ever heard. L131

*/mɪŋk/***mink coat n.**

This is the mink coat which I bought last winter. L121&123  
 This mink coat is longer than that one. L108  
 She must have been wearing that mink coat last night. L129

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Comprehension**

1 T:What has Karen Marsh just done?  
 S:She's just made another film.

2 T:Who is interviewing her?  
 S:A reporter is.

3 T:Does she think she will make another?  
 S>No, she doesn't.

4 T:What does she say she is going to do?  
 S:She says she is going to retire.

5 T:Why does she say she is going to retire?  
 S:She says she feels very tired.

6 T :When did the reporter say Karen Marsh arrived at London Airport?  
 S:He said she arrived at London Airport today.

7T:What did he say she was wearing?  
 S:He said she was wearing a blue dress and a mink coat.

8 T:What did she tell the reporter?  
 S:She told the reporter that she had just made a new film.

9 T:Did she say she was going to make another film?  
 S>No, she said that she was not going to make another.

10 T:What else did she tell the reporter?  
 S:She told the reporter that she felt very tired.

1 T:Ask me if Karen is going to make another film.

S:Is Karen going to make another film?

T:Why isn't...?

S:Why isn't Karen going to make another film?

2 T:Ask me if Karen Marsh arrived at London Airport today.

S:Did Karen Marsh arrive at London Airport today?

T:Where...?

S:Where did Karen Marsh arrive today?

3 T:Ask me if she was wearing a mink coat.

S:Was she wearing a mink coat?

T:What...?

S:What was she wearing?

4 T:Ask me if she told Alan Jones about her new film.

S:Did she tell Alan Jones about her new film?

T:What...?

S:What did she tell Alan Jones?

5 T:Ask me if she is going to retire.

S:Is she going to retire?

T:When...?

S:When is she going to retire?

### homework

绿皮书第133课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**tired**

- 1 I'm tired.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he was tired.

**reading**

- 1 I'm reading.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me she was reading.

**leave**

- 1 I want to leave.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he wanted to leave.

**cinema**

- 1 I don't want to go to the cinema.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me she didn't want to go to the cinema.

**expensive**

- 1 It's expensive.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said it was expensive.

**waiting**

- 1 Tom is waiting for you.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me Tom was waiting for me.

**tired**

- 1 Alice feels tired.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said Alice felt tired.

**urgent**

- 1 It isn't urgent.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me it wasn't urgent.

**joking**

- 1 I'm not joking.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he wasn't joking.

**hungry**

- 1 The children aren't hungry.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me the children weren't hungry.

**homework**

绿皮书 第134课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

| 直接引语 | 间接引语  |
|------|-------|
| can  | could |
| will | would |
| may  | might |

**recognize**

- 1 I can recognize him.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said that he could recognize him.

**supermarket**

- 1 I will go to the supermarket.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me that she would go to the supermarket.

**arrive**

- 1 They may arrive tomorrow.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said that they might arrive tomorrow.

*/'fju:tʃə/***future adj.**

future husband/wife

This is my future husband.

While my future wife was having a bath,  
someone knocked on the door. L117My future husband is taller than your future  
wife. L107**get married**

They are going to get married next week.

They got married last summer.

did/when/who...

The man who you met last night got married a  
month ago.*/həʊ'tel/***hotel**

This is the hotel which I told you about. L121

This must be a very nice hotel. L127

She can't have been living in that hotel. L129

They may be sleeping in that hotel. L131

*/'leɪtɪst/***latest adj.**

newest/latest model

This is the latest/newest model.

The model which you saw yesterday is the  
latest one.*/ɪn't्रə'dju:s/***introduce v.**

I would like to introduce my boss. L107

I had to introduce it to my boss yesterday.

L125

Did you have to introduce it to your boss  
yesterday?

why/when/who...

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T: Does Karen Marsh say she's going to retire?  
S: She says she might.

5 T: Did she say she had made up her mind?  
S: No, she didn't.

2 T: Who does she say she will have to ask?  
S: She says she will have to ask her future husband.

6 T: Who (m) did she say she would have to ask?  
S: She said she'd have to ask her future husband.

3 T: When does she say she's going to get married?  
S: She says she's going to get married next week.

7 T: When did she say she would get married?  
S: She said they'd get married next week.

4 T: Did Karen Marsh tell reporters she might retire?  
S: Yes, she did.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if Carlos will let her make another film.

S: Will Carlos let her make another film?

T: Why won't...?

S: Why won't Carlos let her make another film?

2 T: Ask me if they're going to get married next week.

S: Are they going to get married next week?

T: When...?

S: When are they going to get married?

4 T: Ask me if she would have to ask her future husband.

S: Would she have to ask her future husband?

T: What...?

S: What would she have to ask her future husband?

5 T: Ask me if she introduced them to Carlos.

S: Did she introduce them to Carlos?

T: Who...?

S: Who did she introduce them to?

3 T: Ask me if she might retire.

S: Might she retire?

T: When...?

S: When might she retire?

### homework

绿皮书第135课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**leave**

- 1 I'll leave tomorrow.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he would leave tomorrow.

**understand**

- 1 I can understand English.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me she could understand English.

**cinema**

- 1 I may go to the cinema this evening.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he might go to the cinema this evening.

**come**

- 1 I'm not going to come tomorrow.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me she was not going to come tomorrow.

**travel**

- 1 George won't travel by air.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said George wouldn't travel by air.

**afford**

- 1 I can't afford a new car.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me she couldn't afford a new car.

**retire**

- 1 I may not retire.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said he might not retire.

**rain**

- 1 It will rain tomorrow.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me it would rain tomorrow.

**come**

- 1 The children can come with us.
- 2 What did he say?
- 3 He said the children could come with us.

**right**

- 1 Penny may be right.
- 2 What did she tell you?
- 3 She told me Penny might be right.

**homework**

绿皮书 第136课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

if 如果

if ... (现), 主语 will do ... (将)

If you cook dinner, I will wash the dishes.

I will wash the dishes if you cook dinner.

主将从现

I will play football with you tomorrow if my mom isn't at home.

If I have enough time tomorrow, I will come to see you.

If I miss the bus, I will take a taxi.

If it rains, we won't go shopping.

If it rains tomorrow, we will do nothing.

## Words

*/'fʊtbɔ:l/***football n.**

This is the football which I found on the floor last night.

When he was playing football yesterday afternoon, his mom called him.

What were they doing? Who knows? They must have been playing football.

*/pu:l/***pool n.**

swimming pool

This is the biggest swimming pool I've ever seen. L111

They may be swimming in that pool.

They must be swimming in that pool.

*/wɪn/ /wʌn/***win - won - won**

I won the game.

Did you win the game?

How did you win the game?

Who won the game?

After they had won the game, they went to a bar.

*/wɜːld/***world**

travel round the world

in the world

You're the best father in the world.

When I was very young, I always wanted to travel round the world.

*/po:/***poor adj.**

rich poor

The poor guy who you met last year is very rich now.

*/dɪ'pɛnd/***depend v.**

depend on

If I need help, I can always depend on Leo.

It depends on you.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:What is Brian doing?

S:He's doing the football pools.

2 T:Has he finished doing the football pools?

S:Not really. He has nearly finished.

3 T:What is Brian sure of ?

S:He's sure they'll win something this week.

4 T:What does Julie ask Brian?

S:She asks what Brian will do if he wins a lot of money.

5 T:What will Brian buy if he wins a lot of money?

S:He'll buy a mink coat for Julie.

6 T:What would Julie like better than a mink coat?

S:She would like to see the world.

7 T:What does Brian say they'll do if they win a lot of money?

S:He says they'll travel round the world and stay at the best hotels.

8 T:What will they do when they return home?

S:They'll buy a big house in the country.

9 T:What does Julie say about spending all that money?

S:She says if they spend all that money, they'll be poor again.

10 T:What does everything depend on?

S:Everything depends on 'if' .

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Brian is doing the football pools.

S:Is Brian doing the football pools?

T:What...?

S:What is Brian doing?

2 T:Ask me if Brian always says he'll win the pools.

S:Does Brian always say he'll win the pools?

T:What...?

S:What does Brian always say?

3 T:Ask me if he'll buy his wife a mink coat.

S:Will he buy his wife a mink coat?

T:What...?

S:What will he buy his wife?

4 T:Ask me if Julie wants to see the world.

S:Does Julie want to see the world?

T:What...?

S:What does Julie want to see?

5 T:Ask me if everything depends on 'if' .

S:Does everything depend on 'if' ?

T:What...?

S:What does everything depend on?

### homework

绿皮书 第137课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**money**

- 1 What will you do if you win a lot of money?
- 2 Stay at the best hotels.
- 3 If I win a lot of money, I'll stay at the best hotels.

**miss the bus**

- 1 What will he do if he misses the bus?
- 2 Take a taxi.
- 3 If he misses the bus, he'll take a taxi.

**sell his old car**

- 1 What will he do if he doesn't sell his old car?
- 2 He won't buy a new one.
- 3 If he doesn't sell his old car, he won't buy a new one.

**money**

- 1 What will you do if they offer you more money?
- 2 Work less.
- 3 If they offer me more money, I'll work less.

**letter**

- 1 What will he do if she doesn't type the letter?
- 2 Type it himself.
- 3 If she doesn't type the letter, he'll type it himself.

**come home**

- 1 What will the children do if they come home early?
- 2 Play in the garden.
- 3 If the children come home early, they'll play in the garden.

**ill**

- 1 What will you do if you are ill tomorrow?
- 2 I won't go to work.
- 3 If I am ill tomorrow, I won't go to work.

**go to the party**

- 1 What will you do if you go to the party?
- 2 Enjoy myself.
- 3 If I go to the party, I'll enjoy myself.

**ask**

- 1 What will you do if he asks you?
- 2 Tell him the truth.
- 3 If he asks me, I'll tell him the truth.

**rain**

- 1 What will they do if it rains tomorrow?
- 2 Stay at home.
- 3 If it rains tomorrow, they'll stay at home.

**homework**

绿皮书 第138课的写作练习

反复跟读本视频练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

## 宾语从句

回顾: L99&amp;101&amp;133&amp;135

定义: 一个句子做宾语

陈述句(肯&amp;否)做宾语从句

I think (that) he can win the game.

I believe (that) you are not Leo.

## 一般疑问句做宾语从句

1 Is she a nurse?

2 陈述语序:she is a nurse

3 添加连接词: I want to know if she is  
a nurse.

## 主句+if +宾从(一般疑问句)

1 Do you want an apple?

2 陈述语序: You want an apple.

3 添加连接词: I want to know if you  
want an apple.

## 主句+if +宾从(一般疑问句)

1 Is he ill?

2 陈述语序: He is ill.

3 添加连接词: I want to know if he is ill.

## 主句+if +宾从(一般疑问句)

1 Is he going to study English?

2 陈述语序: He is going to study English.

3 添加连接词: I want to know if he is  
going to study English.

## 主句+if +宾从(一般疑问句)

1 Does she often go shopping?

2 陈述语序: she often goes shopping.

3 添加连接词: I want to know if she  
often goes shopping.

## 特殊疑问句做宾语从句

1 Who is she?

2 陈述语序: who she is

3 I want to know who she is.

## 主句+特殊疑问词+宾从(特殊疑问句)

1 What are you talking about?

2 陈述语序: what you are talking about.

3 I want to know what you are talking  
about.

## 主句+特殊疑问词+宾从(特殊疑问句)

1 Where are you from?

2 陈述语序: where you are from.

3 I want to know where you are from.

## 主句+特殊疑问词+宾从(特殊疑问句)

1 What's your job?

2 陈述语序: what your job is

3 I want to know what your job is.

## 主句+特殊疑问词+宾从(特殊疑问句)

1 When will we go overseas?

2 陈述语序: when you will go overseas

3 I want to know when you will go  
overseas.

/'ekstrə/

## extra

I need some extra money/time.

do/why/who...

After my mom had given me some extra money, I took a taxi to school.

/əʊ'vee'si:z/

## overseas

go overseas

They went overseas 5 days ago.

did/why/when...

The man who went overseas 5 days ago works for a big bank now.

/'endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ /'kæmpəni/

## engineering company

My father has worked for an engineering company for 30 years.

My grandfather worked for an engineering company for 30 years.

did/who/how long...

/laɪn/

## line

repair the telephone line

After he had repaired the telephone line, he went home.

The man who has just repaired the telephone line is having a bath.

## homework

单词造句\*3

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

1 T: Isn't Graham Turner speaking to John Smith?  
S: Yes, he is.

2 T: What does Graham Turner ask John Smith to tell Mary?  
S: He asks John Smith to tell Mary they will be late for dinner this evening.

3 T: What time did he say he would be at their house?  
S: He said he'd be there at six.

4 T: Why does he say he'll be late?  
S: Because the boss wants him to do some extra work.

5 T: When will he finish?  
S: He doesn't know when he will finish.

6 T: What does the speaker's wife want to know?  
S: She wants to know if Mary needs any help.

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if John understands.  
S: Does John understand?  
T: Why doesn't ...?  
S: Why doesn't John understand?

2 T: Ask me if Mary invited them to dinner.  
S: Did Mary invite them to dinner?  
T: Who ... ?  
S: Who invited them to dinner?

3 T: Ask me if Graham will have to stay at the office.  
S: Will Graham have to stay at the office?  
T: Why...?  
S: Why will Graham have to stay at the office?

4 T: Ask me if John knows what Graham is talking about.  
S: Does John know what Graham is talking about?  
T: Why doesn't ... ?  
S: Why doesn't John know what Graham is talking about?

5 T: Ask me if John works for the Overseas Engineering Company.  
S: Does John work for the Overseas Engineering Company?  
T: Who ... for ?  
S: Who does John work for?

### homework

绿皮书 第139课的写作练习

文章跟读至熟读成诵

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**tired**

- 1 Are you tired?
- 2 What does he want to know?
- 3 He wants to know if you are tired.

**late**

- 1 Why is Mary late?
- 2 What does she want to know?
- 3 She wants to know why Mary is late.

**get up**

- 1 Does Tom get up early?
- 2 What does he want to know?
- 3 He wants to know if Tom gets up early.

**homework**

- 1 Is Tom doing his homework?
- 2 What does she want to know?
- 3 She wants to know if Tom is doing his homework.

**cooking**

- 1 What are you cooking?
- 2 What does he want to know?
- 3 He wants to know what you are cooking.

**arrive**

- 1 When does Tom arrive?
- 2 What does she want to know?
- 3 She wants to know when Tom arrives.

**go to bed early**

- 1 Will the children go to bed early?
- 2 What does he want to know?
- 3 He wants to know if the children will go to bed early.

**have a bath**

- 1 When will you have a bath?
- 2 What does she want to know?
- 3 She wants to know when you'll have a bath.

**go to bed early**

- 1 Did Tom go to bed early?
- 2 What does he want to know?
- 3 He wants to know if Tom went to bed early.

**go to bed**

- 1 When did Tom go to bed?
- 2 What does she want to know?
- 3 She wants to know when Tom went to bed.

**homework**

绿皮书 第140课的写作练习  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

/ɪk'saɪtɪd/

**excited adj.**

They were very excited when they knew that their father would take them to school next week.

They must have been very excited when they heard the news. L129

**get on**

She got on the bus 5 minutes ago.

did/when...

She wants to know when you got on the bus. L139

If I can't get on the bus, I will take a taxi.

**middle-aged**

She is a middle-aged woman.

The middle-aged woman who got on the bus five minutes ago is my mom.

When the middle-aged woman was cooking in the kitchen, her husband was watching TV.

/ˈɒpəzɪt/

**opposite prep.**

The middle-aged woman sat opposite the little girl.

did/where/who...

The school is opposite the park.

/ˈkjʊəriəsli/

**curiously adv.**

She looked at the picture curiously.

did/how/why/who...

/ˈfʌni/

**funny adj.**

He is funny.

He is the funny guy who I told you about.

This is the funniest guy I've ever seen.

The funny guy wants to know if you will be free tonight.

/ˈpaʊdər/ /kəmˈpækɪt/

**powder n. compact**

I lost my powder compact last night.  
did/how/when...

After I had lost my powder compact, my boyfriend bought me a new one. L119

/ʌglɪ/

**ugly adj.**

The ugly man who is buying a new car sold his old car this morning.

He is the ugliest man I've ever seen. L111

I had to meet that ugly man tonight. L125  
did/when/who...

/ə'mju:zd/

**amused**

She was amused.

was/who/why...

/smɔɪl/ /'kaɪndli/

**smile v. kindly prep.**

She smiles everyday.

does/how often/who/why...

The woman who is smiling knows my brother.

She smiled kindly.

did/how/who...

/ɪm'bærəst/

**embarrassed adj.**

When I met my ex-girlfriend with her new boyfriend yesterday on the street, I was embarrassed.

The man who was embarrassed is my ex-boyfriend.

When my girlfriend told me that the man who was embarrassed on the street was my girlfriend's ex-boyfriend, I was very embarrassed.

**homework**

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

被动

我被打了

应邀出席

受到老师的表扬

遭到父母的批评

结构:

be(表时态)+done(表被动)

一般现在时被动: am/is/are + done

My hair is cut every month.

结构:

be(表时态)+done(表被动)

一般过去时被动: was/were + done

My hair was cut last month.

**clean the room**

1 Someone cleans the room everyday.

2 The room is cleaned by someone everyday.

**kill the tiger**

1 Wusong killed the tiger.

2 The tiger was killed by Wusong.

**sell stamps**

1 Someone sells stamps in a post office.

2 The stamps are sold in a post office.

**steal my wallet**

1 Someone stole my wallet yesterday.

2 My wallet was stolen yesterday.

**book the room**

1 Someone booked the room yesterday.

2 The room was booked yesterday.

**repair the car**

1 Someone repairs the car regularly.

2 The car is repaired regularly.

### homework

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T:Who was invited to a children's party last week?  
S:Sally was.

2 T:How old is Sally?  
S:She's four.

3 T:How did the mother decide to go?  
S:She decided to take her by train.

4 T:Why was Sally very excited?  
S:Because she had never travelled on at rain before.

5 T:Where did Sally sit on the train?  
S:She sat near the window.

6 T:How did she spend the time?  
S:She asked questions about everything she saw.

7 T:Who got on the train and sat opposite Sally? S:A middle-aged lady did.

8 T:How was the lady dressed?  
S:She was dressed in a blue coat and a large, funny hat.

9 T:What did the lady do after the train had left the station?  
S:She took out her powder compact and began to make up her face.

10 T:Did Sally think the lady was beautiful?  
S>No, she didn't.

## Asking questions

1 T:Ask me if Sally was invited to a children's party.

S:Was Sally invited to a children's party?  
T:When ... ?

S:When was Sally invited to a children's patty?

2 T:Ask me if she was excited.

S:Was she excited?  
T:Why ... ?  
S:Why was she excited?

3 T:Ask me if she sat near a window.

S:Did she sit near a window?  
T:Where ... ?  
S:Where did she sit?

4 T:Ask me if the lady was dressed in a blue coat.

S:Was the lady dressed in a blue coat?  
T:How ... ?

S:How was the lady dressed?

5 T:Ask me if the lady opened her handbag.

S:Did the lady open her handbag?  
T:What ... ?  
S:What did the lady open?

### homework

绿皮书 第141课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；  
请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**open this window**

- 1 Does anyone ever open this window?  
2 Yes, it is opened regularly.

**take him to school**

- 1 Does anyone ever take him to school?  
2 Yes, he is taken to school regularly.

**repair that car**

- 1 Did anyone ever repair that car?  
2 Yes, it was repaired regularly.

**air this room**

- 1 Does anyone ever air this room?  
2 Yes, it is aired regularly.

**correct these exercise books**

- 1 Does anyone ever correct these exercise books?  
2 Yes, they are corrected regularly.

**invite him to a party**

- 1 Does anyone ever invite him to a party?  
2 Yes, he is invited regularly.

**meet them at the station**

- 1 Does anyone ever meet them at the station?  
2 Yes, they are met at the station regularly.

**sharpen this knife**

- 1 Did anyone ever sharpen this knife?  
2 Yes, it was sharpened regularly.

**sharpen these knives**

- 1 Did anyone ever sharpen these knives?  
2 Yes, they were sharpened regularly.

**homework**

绿皮书 第142课的写作练习

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

被动

结构:

be(表时态)+done(表被动)

现在完成时被动: have been+done

100 trees have been planted by students.

被动

结构:

be(表时态)+done(表被动)

一般将来时被动: will be + done

It will be cleaned.

**paint the door**

1 Someone has painted the door.

2 The door has been painted.

**steal my key**

1 Somebody has stolen my key.

2 My key has been stolen.

**invite me to dinner**

1 Nobody has invited me to dinner.

2 I haven't been invited.

**empty the basket**

1 The basket hasn't been emptied yet.

2 It will be emptied tomorrow.

**sharpen the knives**

1 The knives haven't been sharpened yet.

2 They will be sharpened tomorrow.

**water the flower**

1 These flowers haven't been watered yet.

2 They will be watered tomorrow.

**homework**

初级红皮书查找本课语法

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**Words***/sə'raʊnd/ /wʊd/***surround v. wood**

A be surrounded by B

My house was surrounded by beautiful woods, but they were cut down last month.

He was surrounded by people who he didn't know at all.

*/θru:/***through prep.**

walk through the woods/park

After they had walked through the park, they went shopping.

The man who walked through the woods last night found his dog this morning.

*/'bju:tɪ/ /spot/***beauty spot**

This is a beauty spot.

The beauty spot which we went to yesterday was closed this morning.

After they had left the beauty spot, they went to dinner.

*/'vɪzɪtə/***visitor n.**

The visitors who got on the train last night arrived in Beijing.

They met the visitors at the station 5 days ago. did/when/where/who...

/taɪdi/

## tidy adj. untidy adj.

keep the room tidy

She keeps her room very tidy.

does/why/who/how...

/'lɪtə/

## litter n.

litter basket n.

The litter basket which I bought yesterday was broken already.

They are washing the litter basket.

The litter basket is cleaned regularly.

/pleɪs/

## place v.

Litter basket was placed on the street last night.

The visitor placed the coffee cup on their table.

/θrəʊ/ /θru:/ /θreən/

## throw - threw - thrown v.

That visitor has just thrown his coffee cup on the street/in the woods.

The man who threw his money on the street was very excited.

/'rʌbɪʃ/

## rubbish n.

They had to clean the woods, because they threw the rubbish everywhere. L125

After they had thrown the rubbish everywhere, they run away. L119

The police wants to know if you threw the rubbish everywhere. L139

/kaʊnt/

## count v.

[Story]: I counted seven cars.

did/how many/where...

/'kʌvə/

## cover v.

A be covered with B

It snowed last night, and the street was covered with snow this morning.

The woods are covered with rubbish now.

/taɪə/

## tyre n.

These tyres were bought by my father.

This is the tyre that I told you about.

This is the most expensive tyre I've ever bought.

/ræstɪl/

## rusty adj.

There are rusty tins everywhere in the woods.

She wants to know if you have a rusty tin. L139

The rusty tin was thrown away last night.

/ə'mʌŋ/

## among prep.

I found the sign among the rubbish.

did/where/when...

I found my father among hundreds of people.

/'prəsɪkju:t/

## prosecute v.

### homework

单词造句\*3

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

## Comprehension

1 T: Do the writer live in a town or in the city?

S: He lives in a town.

2 T: What is the town surrounded by?

S: It's surrounded by beautiful woods.

3 T: What do the people from the city do on Sundays?

S: They come to see the town and to walk through the woods.

4 T: What have visitors been asked to do?

S: They have been asked to keep the woods clean and tidy.

5 T: Where have litter baskets been placed?

S: They have been placed under the trees.

6 T: What do people do with their rubbish?

S: People throw their rubbish everywhere.

7 T: What did the writer do last Wednesday?

S: He went for a walk in the woods.

8 T: Why did what he saw make him feel sad?

S: Because the litter baskets were empty but the ground was covered with pieces of paper, cigarette ends, old tyres, empty bottles and rusty tins.

9 T: What did he find among the rubbish?

S: He found a sign that said, 'Anyone who leaves litter in these woods will be prosecuted.'

## Asking questions

1 T: Ask me if he lives in a very old town.

S: Does he live in a very old town?

T: Where ... ?

S: Where does he live?

2 T: Ask me if visitors walk through the woods.

S: Do visitors walk through the woods.

T: Where ... ?

S: Where do visitors walk?

3 T: Ask me if litter baskets have been placed under the trees.

S: Have litter baskets been placed under the trees?

T: Where ... ?

S: Where have litter baskets been placed?

4 T: Ask me if I counted seven old cars.

S: Did you count seven old cars?

T: How many ... ?

S: How many old cars did you count?

5 T: Ask me if the ground was covered with pieces of paper.

S: Was the ground covered with pieces of paper?

T: What ... ?

S: What was the ground covered with?

### homework

绿皮书 第143课的写作练习；文章跟读至熟读成诵；

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

**opened the window**

- 1 Has anyone opened the window yet?  
2 Yes, it has already been opened.

**serve**

- 1 Will anyone serve him?  
2 Yes, he'll be served soon.

**corrected these exercise books**

- 1 Has anyone corrected these exercise books yet?  
2 Yes, they have already been corrected.

**repair this car**

- 1 Has anyone repaired this car yet?  
2 Yes, it has already been repaired.

**sweep the floor**

- 1 Will anyone sweep the floor?  
2 Yes, it'll be swept soon.

**find**

- 1 Will anyone find them?  
2 Yes, they'll be found soon.

**tell them about it**

- 1 Will anyone tell them about it?  
2 Yes, they'll be told about it soon.

**sharpen this knife**

- 1 Has anyone sharpened this knife yet?  
2 Yes, it has already been sharpened.

**invite them**

- 1 Has anyone invited them yet?  
2 Yes, they have already been invited.

**sharpen these knives**

- 1 Will anyone sharpen these knives?  
2 Yes, they'll be sharpened soon.

**homework**

绿皮书 第144课的写作练习

请给自己讲解一遍今天的核心知识点

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap

.....  
Questions

.....  
Homework

.....  
Summary & Recap



